

A P P E A R A N C E S

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26

STATE BOARD MEMBERS:

W. DON MAUGHAN, Chairman

DARLENE RUIZ

ELISEO SAMANIEGO

DANNY WALSH

REGIONAL BOARD MEMBERS:

MARION OTSEA, Region 2

CLIFFORD WISDOM, Region 5

STATE BOARD STAFF:

BARBARA LEIDIGH, Counsel

EARLE CUMMINGS, Environmental Specialist

TOM TAMBLYN, Engineer

DAVID BERINGER

JIM SUTTON

CONSULTANT:

LARRY DALE

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26

COUNSEL AND OTHERS

DAVID ANDERSON
Attorney at Law
Office of the Chief counsel
1416 Ninth street
Sacramento, CA 95814
representing DEPARTMENT OF WATER RESOURCES

JAMES E. TURNER
Attorney at Law
Office of the Solicitor
2800 Cottage Way, Room E-2753
Sacramento, CA 95825
representing U. S. BUREAU OF RECLAMATION

ARTHUR L. LITTLEWORTH
Attorney at Law
3750 University Avenue
Riverside, CA 92506
representing STATE WATER CONTRACTORS

STUART L. SOMACH
Attorney at Law
555 Capitol Mall, Suite 950
Sacramento, CA 95814
representing CENTRAL VALLEY PROJECT WATER
ASSOCIATION

SUSAN TRAGER
Attorney at Law
2100 S. E. Main Street, Suite 104
Irvine, California 92714
representing ADVISORY COMMITTEE OF ORANGE COUNTY

DAVID P. WHITRIDGE
Attorney at Law
311 East Main Street, Room 504
Stockton, CA 95202
representing South Delta Water Agency

CLIFFORD SCHULZ
Attorney at Law
770 L Street
Sacramento, CA 95814
representing KERN COUNTY WATER AGENCY, CENTRAL
VALLEY AGRICULTURAL WATER USERS GROUP and
STATE WATER CONTRACTORS

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26

Counsel and others continued

DENIS SMAAGE
Attorney General's Office
State of California
1515 K Street
Sacramento, CA 95814
representing DEPARTMENT OF FISH AND GAME

WILLIAM R. JOHNSTON, P. E.
1342 W. San Jose
Fresno, CA 93711
representing Modesto Irrigation District

CRESSEY H. NAKAGAWA
Attorney at Law
Hearst Building, Suite 1200
3rd & Market Streets
San Francisco, CA 94103
representing CONTRA COSTA WATER AGENCY

CARL P. NELSON, JR.
Attorneys at Law
1990 North California Boulevard
Walnut Creek, CA 94596
representing CONTRA COSTA WATER DISTRICT,
CITY OF ANTIOCH and OAKLEY WATER DISTRICT

WILLIAM THOMAS
Attorney at Law
770 L Street
Sacramento, CA 95814
representing RICE INDUSTRY COMMITTEE

THOMAS M. ZUCKERMAN
Attorney at Law
146-148 West Weber Avenue
Stockton, CA 95202
representing CENTRAL DELTA WATER AGENCY, et al.

JOHN M. SANGER
Attorney at Law
101 California Street
San Francisco, CA 94111
representing BAY INSTITUTE OF SAN FRANCISCO

DAVID DAWDY
3055 - 23rd Avenue
San Francisco, CA 94123
---oOo---

W I T N E S S E S

	Direct	Cross	Exam. ReD
1			
2			
3			
4	MICHAEL HERZ		
5	Mr. Thomas	5, 18	164
6	LUNA LEOPOLD		
7	Mr. Thomas	6, 48	
8	Mr. Littleworth	57	
9	Mr. Turner	61	
10	Mr. Anderson	68	
11	Mr. Sanger	85	
12	Mr. Dawdy	86	
13	Mr. Somach	88	
14	Mr. Schulz	143	154
15	Mr. Cummings		156
16	Mr. Sutton		
17	WILLIAM MORTENSON		
18	Mr. Sanger	171	
19	Mr. Schulz	194	
20	DAVID DAWDY		
21	Mr. Littleworth	198	
22		224	
23	ALAN BLUMBERG		
24	Mr. Somach	251	295
25	Mr. Thomas	280	
26	Mr. Dawdy	283	
27	Mr. Gartrell		294
28	GERALD T. ORLOB		
29	Mr. Whitridge	297	317
30	Mr. Farro		315
31	RANDALL BROWN		
32	Mr. Anderson	319	
33	Mr. Nakagawa	333	
34	Mr. Cummings		344

---o0o---

INDEX OF EXHIBITS

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26

ROMBERG TIBURON CENTER

	Id.	Ev.
20 through 27		169
20A, Errata Sheet	38	169
31	11	169

BAY INSTITUTE OF SAN FRANCISCO

49, A, B		198
49C	170	198
59 through 64 - Slides	171	
65,66		198

DAVID DAWDY

1,2,3,4		248
---------	--	-----

CENTRAL VALLEY PROJECT WATER ASSOCIATION

42,43A - T, 44		296
----------------	--	-----

SOUTH DELTA WATER AGENCY

122, 123, 124, 125, 126		318
-------------------------	--	-----

DEPARTMENT OF WATER RESOURCES

674 - 683		346
-----------	--	-----

---o0o---

1 WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 9, 1987, 8:00 A.M.

2 ---o0o---

3 MR. MAUGHAN: We can continue with the hearing
4 commenced in Concord on the Bay-Delta, impacts of
5 freshwater inflow on San Francisco Bay.

6 What we have left, according to my recollection and
7 my notes, is Romberg Tiburon Center for Environmental
8 Studies.

9 Dr. Herz, I understand that Dr. Rozengurt is ill
10 today and will not be available, and whoever else they
11 have they would like to submit -- Mr. Thomas, I think you
12 are the attorney involved here. Any time you are ready to
13 go, Mr. Thomas, proceed.

14 MR. THOMAS: Good morning, Mr. Chairman. I am
15 Gregory Thomas, appearing for the Romberg Tiburon Center
16 for Environmental Studies.

17 As I make introductions, Mr. Chairman, perhaps I
18 can have one of our associates pass out an errata sheet
19 reflecting changes in the Romberg Tiburon Center Exhibit
20 No. 20.

21 I regret to inform you, as you have noted, that Dr.
22 Rozengurt, the principal author of our Exhibit No. 20 was
23 taken rather seriously ill on Monday night and is in the
24 hospital and won't be able to appear today.

25 We will be somewhat handicapped in responding in

1 detail, perhaps, to some of the methodological features of
2 the report, but we will do the best we can and we are
3 certainly prepared to permit additional detail for the
4 record, if requested on cross-examination.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: I think Dr. Herz knows all that's in
6 there.

7 DR. HERZ: Thank you.

8 MR. THOMAS: That remains to be seen. I hope you
9 are right.

10 Then, let me have you state your name for the
11 record.

12 DR. LEOPOLD: Luna Leopold. I am professor
13 emeritus of Geology and professor emeritus of Landscape
14 Architecture at the University of California, Berkeley.

15 DR. HERZ: Michael J. Herz, Senior Research
16 Scientist, Romberg Tiburon Center for Environmental
17 Studies, San Francisco State University.

18 MR. MAUGHAN: Have these witnesses been sworn?

19 MR. THOMAS: I believe they have not.

20 (Thereupon Romberg Tiburon Center witnesses were
21 sworn.)

22 MR. THOMAS: At the same time, Mr. Chairman, let me
23 just briefly introduce both of these witnesses by giving a
24 brief resume of their professional qualifications.

25 Dr. Leopold, as you know, is professor emeritus of

1 Geology and professor emeritus of Landscape Architecture
2 at the University of California at Berkeley. Dr. Leopold's
3 experience in hydrology spans a good many years, including
4 over ten years as the chief hydrologist for the U. S.
5 Geological Survey in Washington, D. C. From 1956 to 1966,
6 Dr. Leopold remained in the U. S. Geological Survey as the
7 senior research hydrologist until 1972, when he joined the
8 faculty at the University of California at Berkeley. Dr.
9 Leopold holds numerous degrees. He has a Bachelor of
10 Science in Civil Engineering from the University of
11 Wisconsin, a Master's Degree in Physics Metereology from
12 UCLA, and a Ph.D. from Harvard in Geology.

13 In addition, many honorary degrees have been
14 conferred upon Dr. Leopold for his published work on water
15 and the general field of geomorphology. These honorary
16 degrees include Doctor of Science Degree from the
17 University of Wisconsin, Doctor of Geography from the
18 University of Ottawa in Canada, an honorary Doctorate from
19 the University of Mercia in Spain, and an honorary
20 Doctorate of Science Degree from the University of St.
21 Andrews in Scotland.

22 Dr. Leopold is also an elected member of several of
23 the most prestigious scientific societies in the world,
24 including the National Academy of Sciences. Notably no
25 other hydrologist is a member of the National Academy of

1 Sciences.

2 He is also a Fellow of the American Academy of Arts
3 and Science, where again, he is the only hydrologist.

4 He is a member of the American Philosophical
5 Society which was founded by Benjamin Franklin. It has
6 only 500 scholars, and again, Dr. Leopold is the only
7 hydrologist.

8 He has served as the President of the Geological
9 Society of America.

10 There are many other honors and awards that have
11 been conferred upon Dr. Leopold, and they are listed in
12 the Tiburon Center Exhibit 27, as are most of the
13 publications he has authored in his field of expertise.
14 These number five books in the field of hydrology and 145
15 published scientific papers.

16 Dr. Herz obtained his doctorate from the University
17 of Southern California. He is a specialist in
18 environmental management and public policy of coastal and
19 estuarine resources. He is currently the Director of the
20 Bay-Delta project for the Tiburon Center for Environmental
21 Studies of the San Francisco State University.

22 He serves on numerous Boards of Directors and
23 advisory committees as listed in Tiburon Center Exhibit
24 No. 25. A list of nearly 100 publications and
25 presentations by Dr. Herz are also listed in that

1 exhibit.

2 MICHAEL HERZ,

3 having been sworn, testified as follows:

4 DIRECT EXAMINATION

5 by MR. THOMAS:

6 Q Dr. Herz, speaking of the Romberg Tiburon Center, I
7 wonder if you could just state briefly what the Tiburon
8 Center is and what it does?

9 A The Romberg Tiburon Center is a research facility
10 of the San Francisco State University and as such it is
11 the only research and teaching facility in the bay area
12 that is dedicated to looking at the health of San
13 Francisco Bay.

14 Q Dr. Herz, are you one of the principal authors of
15 the Romberg Tiburon Center Exhibit No. 20 entitled "The
16 Role of Water Diversions in the Decline of Fisheries of
17 the Delta San Francisco Bay and other estuaries?"

18 A I am.

19 Q Would you please, briefly, describe the purpose and
20 design of that study?

21 A The basic purpose was to investigate the
22 relationship between levels of freshwater outflow from the
23 Delta and populations of fish that we know to be good
24 indicators of the overall biological health of the
25 estuary.

1 The study was designed to identify the most
2 significant correlations for further examination to
3 develop why changes in the inflow affect fish populations.
4 We did not attempt to exhaustively examine these
5 mechanisms. Our purpose was to identify flow levels that
6 need to be maintained in order to assure that fishery
7 resources of the estuary are protected while more
8 definitive studies of these mechanisms are conducted.

9 LUNA LEOPOLD,

10 having been sworn, testified as follows:

11 DIRECT EXAMINATION

12 by MR. THOMAS:

13 Q Dr. Leopold, are you familiar with the analysis of
14 hydrologic conditions and year-to-year changes that are
15 presented in the Romberg Tiburon Center Exhibit No. 1?

16 A I have studied it.

17 Q And you prepared a re-analysis of the data
18 contained in that report?

19 A Yes, I did.

20 Q Is your re-analysis Romberg Tiburon Center Exhibit
21 No. 22 entitled "Sacramento-Delta Water Supply and Review
22 of the Tiburon Report"?

23 A Yes.

24 Q And is your re-analysis in fundamental agreement
25 with the conclusions contained in the Tiburon report?

1 A Yes.

2 Q Would you explain in simple terms what about this
3 report and about the general problem are your main
4 impressions?

5 A When you are dealing with water supply problems,
6 one is most interested in the years that are dry and,
7 therefore, one must go beyond the question of average
8 values, and the Tiburon report is correct in that it is
9 wise to examine the range of values particularly when one
10 deals with runoff, and, therefore, with regard to the
11 general approach that Tiburon report took in arranging the
12 values in the order of magnitude and plotted them as a
13 frequency diagram, I think that is a correct way to do it.

14 I, therefore, felt that I wanted to see other kinds
15 of relationships, so I took the annual values of runoff
16 from the Riburon report and re-analyzed them in my own
17 way, but again, using the general procedure that the
18 Riburon report used, which was to deal with the data as a
19 frequency analysis.

20 Q All right. I believe that analysis is presented in
21 Figure 1 from your report. Perhaps we could display that
22 at this time.

23 Dr. Leopold, would you explain what this figure
24 shows?

25 A Yes. Plotted on probability paper, I plotted the

1 four types of data. They represent annual values of
2 runoff to and from the Sacramento Delta and the four sets
3 of data include, first, the computed natural inflow and
4 the natural outflow for the whole period of record, and
5 then, the data were tabulated for the regulated inflow and
6 the regulated outflow. These data for each of the four
7 sets of data, in this type of analysis one arranges them
8 in the order of magnitude and plots them as a probability
9 statement.

10 Now, note in these kinds of plots, if one looks on
11 the bottom scale at the No. 50, this means that 50 percent
12 of the points are larger and 50 percent of the points are
13 smaller.

14 In the case of these particular data, the median
15 represented by the 50 percent point also happens to be
16 very close to the average, the arithmetic average. This
17 is not always true.

18 Now, the thing that is striking about this set of
19 data is that under natural conditions inflow to the Delta
20 and outflow from the Delta are practically the same, but
21 after the regulation upstream and the diversions within
22 the Delta occurred, then the numbers are much smaller.

23 For example, looking at the 50 percent point here,
24 we see that the natural inflow and outflow in this period
25 of record averaged about 25 million and the 50 percent

1 point under regulated conditions has dropped down to
2 something like 18.5 million.

3 Now, the water supply problem that we are concerned
4 with is what happens in the dry years, and one must note
5 that if you look at the 80 percent point even under
6 natural conditions, 20 percent, which is 80 from 100, 20
7 percent of the annual values, 20 percent of the years had
8 a flow under original conditions of approximately 15
9 million; in other words, very much smaller.

10 So, that the reason that the probability curve is
11 useful is because you can see how many years out of 100 or
12 how many years out of 10 the result of the flows are
13 smaller and those are the flows that we are interested in.

14 And so, the conclusion is reached that we have
15 already 20 percent of the years under regulated conditions
16 where the outflow is less than or approximately equal to
17 or less than only 10 million acre-feet.

18 Q To be clear, what do you mean when you use the term
19 "natural unimpaired flow"?

20 A Those were simply the data that were presented to
21 me, the data which were tabulated in the Tiburon report,
22 which I understand came from the Department of Water
23 Resources.

24 Q These are flow levels that were experienced without
25 the operation of the state and federal water projects?

1 A That's my understanding, yes.

2 Q And when you refer to regulated outflow or
3 regulated inflow, you are speaking of flow levels
4 experienced with the operation of those projects?

5 A That is correct.

6 Q Okay. Now, what are the implications of this
7 analysis if you were to extend it to the year 2020, Dr.
8 Leopold?

9 A Well, there is a set of data recently furnished to
10 me that represent the estimate of what the annual values
11 would be at the year 2020. The one that I analyzed is the
12 outflow from the Delta for the year 2000, not 2020. Those
13 data show that the estimated outflow from the Delta at the
14 year 2000 -- note, first, that the average outflow comes
15 out to be in the order of 12.5 million, but notice that
16 the 50 percent point is different than that. Fifty
17 percent of the years estimated at 2020 would have a flow
18 of less than 9 million acre-feet. So that in this case,
19 the average value looks much larger and appears to give
20 you more water than when you look at the 50 percent point,
21 meaning that at the year 2000 it is estimated that 50
22 percent of the years would have an outflow from the Delta
23 of less than about 8 million acre-feet. When you start
24 looking at what you call critically dry years, then you
25 find that the critically dry years are a large part of the

1 total number of years if the estimates of 2020 conditions
2 are fulfilled.

3 MS. LEIDIGH: Mr. Thomas, is this overhead in the
4 exhibits that we have?

5 MR. THOMAS: I believe that this is not in the
6 report. We simply produce it as a way of illustrating how
7 this analysis would look if it were extended beyond the
8 period reflected in the figures.

9 MS. LEIDIGH: Would it be possible to provide us
10 all, including the audience, with copies?

11 MR. THOMAS: Did we bring copies of that with us?
12 I suspect that we can do so at the next break, and in the
13 meantime, if you would like, we can have it marked for
14 identification with an exhibit number.

15 MS. LEIDIGH: Yes.

16 MR. TAMBLYN: That would be No. 31.

17 MR. THOMAS: Let the record show this is Tiburon
18 Exhibit No. 31 for the record.

19 (Romberg Tiburon Center
20 Exhibit No. 31, overhead
21 graph, was marked for
identification.)

22 MR. THOMAS: Q Dr. Leopold, you were alluding to
23 the increasing frequency of dry and critically dry years
24 with the operation of the project. I wonder if that can
25 be more easily understood if we look at it in tabular

1 form?

2 A I would prefer to do that because it is clearer.

3 Q Let me have you refer to Figure 2 from the report.

4 A Using the definitions of years which might be
5 called wet, abnormal, subnormal, dry and very dry that
6 actually was presented by the Department of Water
7 Resources, I have compared using the frequency data the
8 unimpaired inflow to the Delta shown in this column here,
9 unimpaired, compared with regulated flow. Now, this
10 represents the percentage of years and that means how many
11 years out of 100. The ones that we are worried about in
12 water supply problems are the dry years, so the most
13 important line here is the change in the number of
14 critically dry years as a result of regulation.

15 Now, this chart represents the total record
16 available to me, 1921 to 1982. It is not a forecast of
17 what is going to be in the future. Already the regulated
18 flow has increased the percentage of years which would be
19 called critically dry from 14 to 39; in other words, that
20 the number of critically dry years at the present time has
21 already been doubled as a result of the control, the
22 diversions and the controls upstream, and since it's a
23 water supply problem, it's the change in the number of dry
24 years that is of greatest importance.

25 Q The classification that you reflected in that

1 chart, Dr. Leopold, did that come from the Department of
2 Water Resources Bulletin 23-62 and 130-70?

3 A Yes, but then, I made a comparison of that
4 particular classification with the classification that was
5 actually in the water rights Decision 1485 in which, as I
6 understand, the classification of years into various
7 categories is based on flows from the Sacramento River
8 alone; in other words, Sacramento valley, rather than the
9 total watershed area.

10 But when you compare the relationship between the
11 classification in 1485, in Decision 1485, and the one that
12 is used here in this classification, they come out to be
13 practically identical, and particularly, they are the same
14 with regard to the critical years. They differ slightly
15 in the definition of subnormal, normal and high, but no
16 matter which of the definitions you use, the Department of
17 Water Resources or the water rights Decision 1485, the
18 definition of the critically dry years is identical.

19 Q Dr. Leopold, your report seems to indicate that
20 this change in the frequency of low flow periods as
21 experienced in the bay itself has been progressive through
22 the year. Could you explain that referring to page 6 of
23 your report?

24 A Yes. When you tabulate the difference between
25 inflow and outflow; in other words, the diversions, the

1 natural outflow less the regulated outflow; in other
2 words, the change you find, and that could be an estimate
3 of the depletion -- in other words, the difference between
4 the regulated and the natural outflow values from the
5 Delta, the depletion started in the decade 1921 to 1929 to
6 be a depletion of only about 3.7 million acre-feet
7 approximately, increasing until the period 1980 to 1982
8 that it jumped from 3 million to nearly 13 million, so in
9 other words, there has been a progressive change in this
10 value of depletion defined by natural outflow from the
11 Delta less the regulated outflow.

12 This is a depletion figure, increased each decade
13 starting in the 1920s with the value of about three to
14 four million and increasing to more than 12 million in the
15 last decade.

16 Q Having made this effort to demonstrate the gradual
17 withdrawal of water and as a consequence a decrease in
18 outflow from the Delta, apparently you think this is
19 important. Could you explain what the importance of this
20 analysis is?

21 A Well, if there has been a progressive depletion,
22 what we have done, and any further depletion will further
23 the tendency to increase the number of years which are
24 critically dry, no matter how defined.

25 Q What are the consequences of that, in your

1 judgment, for the salinity levels experienced in the
2 estuary?

3 A Well, quite clearly the position of the null zone
4 is dependent in part on the outflow from the Delta and,
5 therefore, as the outflow of freshwater from the Delta
6 progressively increases, you can expect salinity is going
7 to gradually move upstream, the null zone is going to move
8 upstream and salinity values will probably also increase
9 with time.

10 Q Do you view average measures of salinity as being
11 the salient measure, or are you more concerned with the
12 salinity levels experienced during these low-flow periods?

13 A Well, I think that you have to recognize that
14 average values are useful, but not the whole story. One
15 of the things that you can say about salinity data is that
16 the variance is very large, large changes occur from
17 season to season and from year to year, and therefore, one
18 has to study the variance, if you like, of salinity
19 values.

20 More than that, let me say that the way we measure
21 salinity or tend to generally measure salinity is taking
22 samples out of the surface or the upper part of the flow,
23 and that is not necessarily what we want to know, because
24 the intrusion of saltwater tends to move along the bed of
25 the river and, therefore, it would actually be better if

1 we had measures of the variation of salinity from the
2 surface down to the bed.

3 Q Are there reasons related to the biological health
4 of the bay that lead you to believe that these changes in
5 flow levels are important?

6 A Well, it's quite clear that the biological
7 diversity of the whole ecosystem in such an estuary has
8 developed over a long period of time under conditions of
9 natural inflow and outflow, and quite clearly that
10 equilibrium is going to be disturbed in one way or another
11 when one deprives the system progressively of the
12 freshwater under which it developed.

13 Q I gather that after you finished your report, you
14 were shown reports that had been prepared by the experts of
15 the State Water Contractors, one of which had to do with the
16 computation of the so-called natural flows to the Delta?
17 Did your review of that report call into question the data
18 that you have just been describing on the levels of historic
19 flows and how they have changed with water development?

20 A Well, that report ended up by giving simply an
21 average value. That average value computed indicated that
22 the changes wrought by man have increased the total flow
23 into the Delta by twice. I think that that figure is so
24 out of line with all the data that we have in hydrologic
25 direct measurements of the effect of water yield from altering

1 the vegetation, that it appears unreasonable to me.

2 Q Now, one of those direct measurements was made by the
3 U.S. Forest Service in their experiments with reducing
4 vegetation.

5 A Well, you see what this report purports to show is
6 that the change of vegetation can increase the water yield.
7 The U.S. Foresty Service has had for a long time experiments
8 trying to demonstrate that changing the nature of the forest
9 would increase the water yield, and so, large amounts of
10 data from varous parts of the country are available. These
11 data show again and again that the largest increase in
12 water yield ever obtained by the change of forest cover
13 was in the order of 15 to 20 percent, and that increase
14 did not last more than five years, and that's the reason
15 that I believe that a computation shows that the water
16 yield has doubled is unreasonable in relation to the data
17 available to us.

18 Q You are also familiar with experiments conducted in
19 the State of Arizona by the U. S. Geological Survey; are
20 you not?

21 A As a matter of fact, I started that investigation.
22 The water users in Arizona had felt that by cutting down
23 the vegetation on the pinon juniper zone in the mid
24 elevations of Arizona, they could increase the water yield
25 for the irrigation of water supply.

1 The Geological Survey set up an experiment under
2 conditions of actual change; in other words, where the
3 vegetation was actually being changed. The result was
4 that the data are so varied that it was estimated that it
5 would take nearly a century of experimentation to find out
6 whether, indeed, the water yield had increased. In other
7 words, you could not increase the water yield by changing
8 the vegetation under those conditions.

9 Q Let me turn now to Dr. Herz, and ask you in
10 comparing the Delta outflows that have been described by
11 Dr. Leopold with fishery populations, did you use the same
12 hydrologic data that Dr. Leopold has been describing?

13 DR. HERZ: A Yes, we did.

14 Q What was the source of those data?

15 A Those came from the Department of Water Resources.
16 They were their data on the period of record for regulated
17 and natural Delta outflow and a few years added after
18 1978, a few years before the 1921 period which is the
19 starting period of record.

20 Q Do these Delta outflow values reflect the water
21 diversions due to the operation of the state and federal
22 water projects and other consumptive users?

23 A They do.

24 Q Are these the diversions that are displayed in
25 Figures 3-2 through 3-14, and Tables 3-1 through 3-3 of

1 your Exhibit 20?

2 A That's right.

3 Q Before we refer to this figure, just to be clear,
4 Dr. Leopold has been describing his analysis of annual
5 flow data, I take it you also made use of monthly flow
6 data in your analysis; didn't you?

7 A That's right. We did an analysis on an annual
8 basis, and also, on a seasonal, and particularly the
9 spring period.

10 Q Now, let me have you refer to this Figure 3-2 which
11 we have displayed here in the hearing room, and, Mr.
12 Chairman, that follows page 51 of the report for those
13 that can't see the display here.

14 What does this photograph tell us about the effects
15 of water diversions on Delta outflows before and after
16 construction of the state and federal water projects?

17 A This figure illustrates the changes in the amount
18 of water diverted from the system during the period of
19 record. It shows that during the early part of the
20 century and up until the beginning of the projects, until
21 the forties when the Shasta Dam was completed, three and a
22 half to four million acre-feet per year was diverted from
23 the system and as various components of the water project
24 were completed the average amount of water diverted for a
25 five-year period has increased up to approximately 11.5

1 million acre-feet per year.

2 Q All right. This figure displays mean annual flow
3 levels. You also analyzed the monthly changes in flow;
4 didn't you, from these diversions in Figures 3-6 through
5 3-11 on page 51 of the report?

6 A Yes. And, although I don't think we have an
7 overhead on it, I will call attention to the spring months
8 April, May and June, particularly, Figure 3-9, 3-10 and
9 3-11, and in this case particularly 3-10, which is for
10 May, which shows a similar trend of increasing diversions,
11 and I wanted to call attention to the springtime because
12 the springtime is the period when flow to the estuary is
13 most important in terms of the needs for fish and
14 wildlife, or fish migration, spawning and so on.

15 Q Very good. Now let us turn to Figure 6-11.

16 MR. MAUGHAN: Just for the record, our copies show
17 these charts between pages 46 and 47. I don't know, you
18 have been referring to page 51.

19 MR. THOMAS: It may be just my error. Let me
20 check.

21 MR. MAUGHAN: There are tables at page 51, not
22 charts.

23 MR. THOMAS: Do you have a stapled or bound
24 version?

25 MR. MAUGHAN: Stapled.

1 MR. THOMAS: Okay. There was delivered to the
2 board about a month after the first version was delivered
3 on the deadline, a revised version.

4 MR. MAUGHAN: So, you are referring to the revised
5 version?

6 MR. THOMAS: Yes, we are referring to the revised
7 version.

8 To facilitate your following the testimony, perhaps
9 we can provide you with that revised version. In fact,
10 perhaps you can provide a copy for each of the board
11 members.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: Does the errata sheet refer to the
13 revised report or --

14 MR. THOMAS: I believe that is correct.

15 A Yes.

16 MS. RUIZ: They referred to the revised report or
17 they are, in fact, changes that are already in that
18 revised report?

19 A No, they are changes -- they are subsequent to the
20 revised report.

21 MS. RUIZ: So, they are revisions to the revisions?

22 A That's right.

23 MR. THOMAS: We were speaking of this Figure 6-11
24 which follows -- we were about to speak of Figure 6-11
25 which follows page 115 in the report.

1 Q What does that figure indicate, Dr. Herz?

2 A This shows deviations in flow for spring months
3 which means the upper line, the dashed line across the mid
4 point of the graph represents the average natural Delta
5 flow, mean natural Delta flow for the period of record,
6 1921 to 1978, and the dashed line, that wiggles back and
7 forth across, is the mean spring outflow for that set of
8 information, that set of years. And what it shows is that
9 the natural Delta outflow varied around the mean of that
10 period throughout the entire duration of what we portray
11 there within plus or minus about 25 percent of that mean.

12 However, if you look at the lower line, line 2,
13 which shows the mean regulated Delta outflow, you see that
14 it diverges markedly from the mean for the natural,
15 particularly in the period following the beginning of the
16 completion of various components of the projects in the
17 forties and toward the end of the period of record shown
18 there the percent of deviations is as much as 60 percent
19 of the natural flow.

20 Q Dr. Herz, after analyzing the changes in Delta
21 outflows over this period of time, you compared these data
22 to populations of certain fish species in the estuary some
23 years later; is that correct?

24 A That's right.

25 Q Now, I would like to ask you some questions

1 regarding your choice of data in investigating these
2 correlations. First, for which species did you examine
3 population data and why did you use those particular
4 species?

5 A What we looked at were salmon, striped bass and
6 shad, and our choice of those particular species was that
7 they are anadromous fish, fish that spend part of their
8 life in the ocean, but return to the estuary to spawn and,
9 therefore, are very much dependent on the conditions in
10 the estuary, and particularly those conditions that are
11 established by freshwater inflow.

12 Q Now, we have had some previous testimony about fish
13 population levels and their relation to flows presented by
14 the State Water Contractors in their Exhibit No. 263.
15 They presented information on the abundance of Pacific
16 herring and other saltwater species. Why didn't you
17 choose these species for your investigation?

18 A The basic reason was that if you are looking for
19 changes that are dependent upon freshwater flow, you want
20 to use species that are, as I indicated, dependent upon
21 that freshwater outflow and the pelagic species that spend
22 most of their lives in the ocean such as herring and other
23 species that were used in those reports, since they spend
24 almost their entire lives in the ocean, are not
25 particularly influenced by the level of freshwater flow.

1 Q Would you say that they are not good indicator
2 species for showing the biological health of the estuary?

3 A Well, not only are they not good indicators for
4 showing the biological health of the estuary, they are not
5 good indicators of impacts of freshwater flow on the
6 system.

7 Q What indices of fish abundance did you use in your
8 investigation?

9 A We used a variety of different indices. First, we
10 looked at the commercial catch during the period early in
11 the century, approximately 1915 to the 1930s. We chose
12 that particular period because that was when the system
13 was working relatively naturally. The level of freshwater
14 diversions from the system was quite low and the system
15 was quite productive in terms of species of interest, so
16 we thought that it would make a great deal of sense to
17 look at the relationship between flow and abundance during
18 the periods that were relatively unaffected by major
19 projects.

20 Then, too, we used later in this century and more
21 currently we used some other measures. We used the
22 party-boat catch which is data collected by the State
23 Department of Fish and Game, and we used several measures
24 of abundance which are independent of catch. One is the
25 salmon run or the return of salmon to the Red Bluff Dam,

1 and the other is some analyses we did utilizing some
2 modifications of the striped bass index, all of which --
3 or both of which are indicators of population abundance,
4 as I said, and not dependent upon catch information.

5 Q Now, appreciating that you used several indices of
6 abundance beyond fish catch data, let me ask with regard
7 to the fish catch data, did you take any steps to assure
8 that this data was not affected by the variability and the
9 level of effort over the time series that you used?

10 A Yes and no. For the early part of the century the
11 commercial fish catch records were taken pretty much as
12 they were reported. Skinner, who is considered by many to
13 be one of the best sources of information on the fisheries
14 in the system the early part of the century, indicated
15 that the level of effort was relatively constant during
16 that period, and the more recent data, striped bass data,
17 there is a level of effort calculated in those figures and
18 our other two measures of abundance do not depend on
19 fishing data, so it is a moot point.

20 Q Why did you use running averages of Delta outflow
21 and lag times of several years in investigating the
22 relationship between levels of outflow and fish landings?

23 A Well, there was a biological basis for using these
24 running-year averages. We reasoned that fish are affected
25 by freshwater outflows, especially for the first several

1 years of their life before they mature and are caught.

2 Some people argue that the conditions preceding the
3 years they spawn also should be taken into account because
4 the water system is an accumulative system. We wanted to
5 take account of the average conditions over the critical
6 phases of their life cycles. We found the strongest
7 correlations between outflow in salmon populations, for
8 example, when outflow was averaged for three running
9 years, and for striped bass when it was averaged for five
10 running years.

11 This corresponds in some degree to what we know
12 about the susceptibility of these species to various kinds
13 of environmental stress during the early periods of their
14 life.

15 MR. WALSH: I'm sorry, I should have asked this
16 question when you were on the fish catch data. Is there
17 anything different in the practices between the turn of
18 the century and presently? There was some discussion on
19 fish catch data not too long ago as it relates to more
20 recent catches. Today fish-catch data could reflect
21 anything from Monterey Bay to Gualala or Fort Bragg in
22 terms of catch, and where they are landed, a much larger
23 range.

24 At the turn of the century, would you sometimes
25 have that range?

1 A The data that we used were not the ocean-trawl
2 catch. We were using during the period of commercial
3 fishing the period from 1950 to the 1930s, data reported
4 on catch in San Francisco Bay because that was the period
5 before commercial fishing for all three of these species
6 was ended. So, we don't have that complicating factor of
7 ocean catch and not knowing where it was caught and having
8 some confusion about the fact that you could be having
9 Bodega Bay and Monterey Bay landings reported if you are
10 using the ocean-catch data, but since it was bay catch,
11 that difficulty, we feel, is not a true one.

12 MR. WALSH: Okay.

13 MR. THOMAS: Q Now, I would like you to explain
14 the correlations that were discovered, Dr. Herz. Let's
15 turn, first, to Figure 5-9, if that could be displayed.
16 That appears after page 87 in the report. What does this
17 figure indicate about the relationship between regulated
18 Delta outflow and commercial salmon catch in the
19 Sacramento and San Joquin Rivers?

20 A Well, first of all, what this figure shows is the
21 relationship between regulated Delta outflow for the
22 spring months, April, May and June, compared with
23 commercial salmon catch in the Sacramento and San Joquin
24 Rivers.

25 MR. WALSH: Which page are we on?

1 MR. THOMAS: This figure appears after page 87, if
2 you have the revised bound version.

3 MR. WALSH: I have the bound copy.

4 MS. LEIDIGH: Top of page 89 in the stapled
5 version.

6 A Thank you. In any case, it is the commercial
7 salmon catch for that period and what is shown there is
8 based on a two-year lag between flow and catch, and we
9 showed this figure because it shows a relatively high
10 degree of coincidence between flow and catch when that lag
11 is put in there, and it also includes both the
12 pre-and-post-project periods.

13 MR. THOMAS: Q Was there a particular reason why
14 you chose to utilize data from the spring months, April,
15 May and June?

16 A As I have indicated earlier, because many of our
17 correlations are strongest for the spring period -- let me
18 back up. We have reasoned that because freshwater inflow
19 to this estuary, or any other estuary at least in the
20 Northern hemisphere, is very dependent on flows during the
21 spring period, that we would expect that spring flows
22 would play a major role in fish production and that's why
23 we have shown these data in this way.

24 Q Can you explain why the fish catch data on this
25 chart end as of 1957?

1 A 1957 was the last year of commercial salmon catch
2 in San Francisco Bay. Since then, commercial salmon
3 fishing has been only in the ocean.

4 Q Now, to understand the correlation lying behind the
5 coincidence of curves, perhaps we can turn to Figure 5-10
6 that appears after page 88 of the report, and we have that
7 on the overhead project as well.

8 Dr. Herz, what does this figure tell us about the
9 correlation between the springtime Delta outflow and
10 annual salmon catch for the years between 1916 and 1930.

11 A Well, this figure shows a quite close relationship
12 between catch and flow, in this case a three-year running
13 average of flow and a two-year lag, and in this case, the
14 correlation between flow and catch plotted in this way is
15 exceedingly high. It is .97, a perfect correlation being
16 1.0. And this means that approximately 94 percent of the
17 variance in the relationship between these two factors is
18 accounted for by this correlation coefficient.

19 Q Why does this figure contain data only for the
20 years 1916 to 1930?

21 A Well, again, this is the period we chose because it
22 marked a time when the estuary was operating relatively
23 naturally. Diversions were relatively low. According to
24 Skinner, the level of effort for the commercial catch was
25 relatively constant and we thought this was a period that

1 reflected the healthy functioning of this estuary.

2 Q What was the justification for using a three-year
3 running average for Delta outflow figures and a two-year
4 lag between this data and the annual catch data?

5 A These time periods, the three-to-five years
6 corresponds to the time between hatching and returning to
7 the Delta to spawn, and we felt it made biological sense
8 for that reason.

9 Q Now, did you continue this analysis beyond 1930 in
10 order to capture the post-project period after commercial
11 fishing ended?

12 A Well, not precisely because of the fact, as I
13 indicated, we moved to a different type of analysis and in
14 the next --

15 Q Perhaps we can display Figure 5-22, which comes in
16 the report before page 94. Could you explain this figure?

17 A In this figure we showed the relationship between
18 the five-year running mean of the fall salmon run with no
19 lag, and what we have is a correlation between those two
20 factors of .89, which accounts for about 80 percent of the
21 variance between the two factors, a fairly high degree of
22 agreement.

23 I should point out this is not fish catch data,
24 this is based on the relationship between flow and the
25 number of salmon returning to spawn at Red Bluff Dam, so

1 it is a measure of abundance rather than catch data.

2 Q Now, let's turn to Figure 6-7, which follows page
3 113. This shows the relationship between the striped bass
4 index of abundance and regulated Delta outflow for the
5 period 1959 to date.

6 Do we have that one for display? This is Figure
7 6-7, which follows page 113.

8 A I think we don't have an overhead for that. Let's
9 move on past that one, skip that one for the moment
10 because we don't have it up.

11 Q I can find it for you.

12 A Wait a minute. This figure again deals with
13 deviations rather than raw data. The relationship shows
14 the deviations, in this case, five-year running means of
15 two different striped bass indices, the total and the
16 Delta compared with the deviations of regulated Delta
17 outflow for the 1959-to-1985 period.

18 It should be noted that the water deviation, the
19 regulated Delta outflow line represents the deviation of
20 regulated Delta outflow from the natural Delta outflow
21 mean which is for the period 27.3 million acre-feet.

22 MR. WALSH: It's still pretty early. Can you
23 explain what you are doing there to me again, please? I
24 didn't follow you. Maybe it was my fault.

25 A The zero line in the figure, this one takes a bit

1 of getting used to because deviation is not the easiest
2 concept. I have trouble with it and I have only had my
3 first cup of coffee.

4 The zero line represents the mean for all three
5 measures in this case, the two striped bass indices and
6 the natural Delta outflow line.

7 MR. WALSH: The mean of all three for Delta
8 outflow?

9 A No, the zero line represents the mean. There are
10 three lines shown there. One is the total Delta striped
11 bass index, the zero line for them represents the average
12 for the entire period covered there. The zero line for
13 the water flow information represents deviations of
14 regulated Delta outflow from the mean for the period.

15 MR. WALSH: Okay.

16 A And what it shows is that as the deviation flow
17 increase in a negative direction, that means more water is
18 being diverted, an increasing amount of water is being
19 diverted from the system, the measures of striped bass
20 abundance, these two striped bass indices, also shows
21 increasing deviation away from their average, indicating a
22 decline in those species.

23 MR. THOMAS: Q Will you explain why you use a
24 five-year running average for the striped bass index?

25 A In the use of the striped bass index, there have

1 been some serious problems encountered particularly since
2 the drought years. We have found that if we use five-year
3 averages of striped bass index, that it continues to
4 remain a good predictor of abundance of bass, and if we
5 use May flows rather than June and July flows, which were
6 originally used as the flow by Fish and Game in their
7 original use of it --

8 MR. MAUGHAN: I would like to get into the record
9 right here, if I can have an interruption. I asked last
10 week about the fact that in 1977 we had a beautiful
11 correlation between striped bass abundance and Delta
12 inflow sufficient that the people who were there and
13 testified thought, this looks like a great relationship,
14 so it was incorporated, and those standards have been met
15 since that time for ten years, but unfortunately, that
16 correlation has not worked the last ten years.

17 What I am getting at, is that I have seen over my
18 time, that in advance things like they are going to work
19 and then you apply them, and they may or may not work.

20 Do you have any comments to make on why that
21 relationship, that good correlation, with the high
22 percentage of correlation that appeared to be there,
23 didn't work?

24 A Well, the only insight that I can offer, and it is
25 somewhat speculative, is that if one views the water in

1 the system and the system is an accumulative system that
2 is not just influenced by the flow of one year, and look
3 rather at the influence of multiple years, then it appears
4 as if this index does work.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: It wasn't just one year. It was the
6 fifties up to the seventies.

7 A No, what I am saying is if you use means of a
8 number of years rather than using individual years to
9 compare with the striped bass abundance --

10 MR. MAUGHAN: I think if you will do that and stop
11 in the middle of the seventies, you will think you have a
12 good correlation. If you continue beyond that, I think
13 you will find that you don't.

14 A As you will see in some of the figures that follow,
15 some of these striped bass index flow relationships that
16 we presented in our report do go up into the period past
17 the drought years. That's the whole point, that we feel
18 that the modifications that we have used do seem to make
19 it a better predictor.

20 MR. MAUGHAN: It seemed to, that's my point. Until
21 we have some experience, I'm not so sure just how much
22 competence anyone can place in some of these correlations
23 because I could name others, but they get outside of this
24 particular area, which I have observed in the past and I
25 have seen some that do work, but I have seen a lot that

1 don't work, so we have to look at them with some degree of
2 concern and care.

3 Q Well, I think again, we rely on the fact that we
4 are not looking at one measure, we are looking -- we have
5 six different measures of fish abundance. We have
6 commercial fish catch and we have two measures of
7 abundance that are not based on catch, and all of these,
8 as you will see as we go through the testimony, seem to
9 predict a requirement for the same amount of water. We
10 feel relatively confident that the relationships that we
11 are showing are not just chance ones and do make some
12 sense.

13 MR. MAUGHAN: Just one last comment. On the
14 striped bass index they spent a considerable amount of
15 money and they have probably the best data. Some of this
16 data that you now have are sort of indirect and I'm just
17 throwing it in there to see if you had any further
18 comments, and you have already made your comments, so
19 proceed.

20 MR. THOMAS: We will have some further reflections
21 on that, too, as we go through the testimony, Mr.
22 Chairman.

23 Q Let's move now to Figure 6-26 that appears after
24 page 119 in the exhibit, and I believe we have that
25 information displayed here in the hearing room.

1 Dr. Herz, does this figure display the correlation
2 for the relationship that you were describing between
3 spring Delta outflow and the five-year running mean
4 striped bass index?

5 A It does. This is with spring monthly flows,
6 five-year averages with no lag, we find a relatively high
7 correlation of .82, which accounts for about two-thirds of
8 the variance between these two factors.

9 Q Could you explain why you used the period 1959 to
10 1981?

11 A Well, we were particularly interested in spanning a
12 period that was, first of all, using a period that was
13 post-project; and secondly, to see whether this
14 relationship held up after the drought years, and as I was
15 discussing with Mr. Maughan, it appears from these
16 correlations that that relationship does, in fact, hold
17 up.

18 Q Let's now display Figure 7-1 that follows page 129
19 of the report. This is for the shad fishery. This figure
20 shows the correlation between annual shad catch and the
21 two year running mean annual regulated Delta outflow; does
22 it not?

23 A That's correct.

24 Q In this case, the running mean for outflow is two
25 years and the lag time between flows and catch is one

1 year. Can you explain those choices of data?

2 A In this case, I think we used -- we are showing
3 this because this gives us our strongest correlation for
4 shad. It also makes some biological sense in that the
5 first returning shad come back to the system to spawn
6 after three years.

7 Q And why was data chosen from the years 1916 to 1931
8 only?

9 A Well, again, the same response as with our previous
10 salmon and striped bass, that was the period when the
11 system was working well and commercial fishing was at its
12 high point, and the system was very productive and we
13 wanted to see under relatively natural conditions before
14 large exports how the system worked and what the
15 relationships were apt to be.

16 Q Now, for salmon and striped bass, we were looking
17 at the correlation between fish abundance and spring
18 flows. Perhaps just for the sake of consistency, we can
19 look at the spring flow correlations for shad as well. We
20 do have a figure displaying that, which is unnumbered?

21 A Actually, in the errata sheet it does have a new
22 number of 7.5. I don't know whether you want to use that
23 or whether you want to assign it a new exhibit number for
24 testimony purposes.

25 MR. THOMAS: This particular chart does not appear

1 except in the errata, as I understand, so we might for
2 convenience just designate it for the record as Tiburon
3 Center Exhibit No. 32.

4 MR. TAMBLYN: Just incorporate it in the errata.

5 MS. LEIDIGH: Why don't we just include it as part
6 of the errata sheet and designate the errata sheet Exhibit
7 No. -- say, 20A.

8 MR. THOMAS: Is 20A appropriate?

9 MR. TAMBLYN: 20A. Let the record show that this
10 figure comes from Tiburon Center Exhibit No. 20A, which is
11 the errata sheet.

12 (Errata Sheet was marked
13 Romberg Tiburon Center Exhibit
No. 20A for identification.)

14 MR. THOMAS: Q Could you explain what this figure
15 shows, Dr. Herz?

16 A Well, in this case we are looking at the
17 relationship between annual shad catch and mean spring
18 regulated Delta outflow, in this case, a two-year average,
19 two years previous and a one-year lag, a total of three
20 years.

21 For example, the catch of 1916 is based on the
22 outflow of 1914 and 1915, the mean of those two. In this
23 case we get again a rather high correlation of .89, which
24 accounts for about 80 percent of the variance between the
25 two.

1 Q Having found all of these highly significant
2 correlations between freshwater inflows in the San
3 Francisco estuary and populations of indicator species, is
4 there any evidence to show that these are not mere
5 coincidents?

6 A Well, as I indicated, one of the reasons that we
7 feel that it is not just coincidence, is that we find
8 these relationships across three species of fish during
9 two different eras of the history of the system, one the
10 contemporary period and the other the historic period, so
11 both pre and post, and we also have some independent
12 measures of fish abundance that are not dependent on
13 catch, which also show the same relationship, so that
14 would require an unusually high degree of coincidence to
15 have those things all come together by chance and show
16 these relationships.

17 Q Have you analyzed data from other estuaries to see
18 whether or not the same correlations can be found in other
19 natural systems?

20 A Well, this is really Dr. Rozengurt's area of
21 expertise since he spent much of the last 25 years doing
22 these comparisons, but yes, in fact, the relationships
23 that we find here seem quite consistent with what had been
24 observed not only in some of the Soviet estuaries that are
25 discussed in a couple of other exhibits that we submitted,

1 but also, estuaries of other continents of the world, so
2 these relationships between declining freshwater flows and
3 deterioration of the system, the first signs of
4 deterioration being fisheries catch or fish catch and
5 fisheries abundance measures starting to decline.

6 Q For the record, in Dr. Rozengurt's absence, since
7 he is not available to testify in detail on these
8 estuaries, his study of the Sea of Azov and other
9 estuaries described in the Tiburon Center Exhibits 23 and
10 24, I might have you just in summary fashion, Dr. Herz,
11 indicate for the Sea of Azov what was found.

12 We can do that by referring to Figure 6A.

13 A Well, first of all, I should say a few things, I
14 guess, about the Sea of Azov. It's my understanding, I
15 have been told --

16 MR. WALSH: Where is the Sea of Azov? I am trying
17 to get a picture in my mind of the map.

18 A If you look at -- there's a map in Tiburon Center
19 Exhibit 23 that shows where it is in the Soviet Union.
20 It's connected to the Black Sea.

21 MR. WALSH: It's near the Caspian?

22 A It's connected to the Black Sea. One of the points
23 I wanted to make was that in someone's discussion earlier
24 on the inflow to San Francisco Bay, I am told there was
25 some objection made to comparing the Sea of Azov with San

1 Francisco Bay because they said it did not communicate
2 with an ocean or sea and was shallow or much shallower
3 than San Francisco Bay.

4 I think if Dr. Rozengurt were here, he would be
5 jumping up and down and saying that was not the case, that
6 it was, in fact, communicating with the Black Sea, and
7 that it does have depths that are not as deep as the
8 deepest spots in San Francisco Bay, but it is not an
9 entirely shallow sea and it does contain some fish species
10 that are not dissimilar to some of the anadromous species
11 that we have here in San Francisco Bay, and particularly
12 sturgeon.

13 MR. WALSH: Okay. Mr. Thomas, have you got the map
14 there -- I've got it. Let's go on.

15 A In any case, what this Figure 6A shows is similar
16 data to what we have been showing for the Sea of Azov,
17 which shows -- the first line 1 is regulated combined
18 river inflow to the Sea of Azov and commercial fish catch
19 of a number of anadromous species; line 2 is sturgeon and
20 a couple of other anadromous species, and what it shows is
21 this same kind of paralleling trend of flow and fish
22 catch.

23 MR. WALSH: So you have three major river systems
24 going into the Sea of Azov?

25 A Yes.

1 MR. THOMAS: Q I don't know whether you will be in
2 a position to answer this, Dr. Herz, in Dr. Rozengurt's
3 absence, but it would be illuminating what this study of
4 the Sea of Azov shows regarding the effectiveness of
5 hatchery stocks to mitigate the natural fishery losses
6 that were experienced in that Russian estuary.

7 A Well, there are some fairly astounding numbers. As
8 the freshwater diversions from the river leading to the
9 Sea of Azov began to increase and get up above 50, and
10 then, I think 60 percent, the result was near collapse of
11 their anadromous fish species. They attempted to mitigate
12 this by building huge numbers of hatcheries, and I think
13 the number of hatcheries approached 100 hatcheries, and
14 even in their peak year of dumping something in the order
15 of six billion fry of one species into the system, they
16 could not reverse the declining trend, and ultimately this
17 area, which was one of the richest fisheries in the world,
18 is now producing one or two percent of what it did before
19 these diversions began.

20 Q To just sum up, all of the data from the several
21 other estuaries that were analyzed in the report, what
22 conclusions can be drawn that bear upon the freshwater
23 needs for San Francisco Bay by looking at these other
24 estuaries?

25 A Well, the similarity that results from a

1 examination of all these estuaries all over the world
2 indicates that freshwater inflow serves a number of
3 different functions and once you start radically -- well,
4 not even radically, once you start diverting, according to
5 Dr. Rozengurt, over a quarter or a third of the historic
6 inflow to these systems, you start seeing problems with
7 these functions, and the functions are freshwaters
8 repelling the intrusion of seawater, its ability to
9 provide nutrients for the system, its ability to create
10 the conditions necessary for migration of anadromous fish
11 species, both in and out of the system, the creation of a
12 null or entrapment zone which is needed for production of
13 food at the base of the food chain, it's providing of
14 flushing and mixing needed to -- in the case of most of
15 these estuaries, entrain and flush out to sea various
16 pollutants, and finally, creating an equilibrium in the
17 salinity system.

18 Some or all of these things have been identified by
19 one or more people for this estuary, and unfortunately,
20 some of the data that would be useful to have for
21 describing what has happened as we have diverted an
22 increasing amount of water, we do not have in the kind of
23 detail we should have.

24 Finally, I would like to say that in addition to
25 this 25 to 30 percent threshold, if you divert more than

1 25 to 30 percent of the historic inflow, you begin to see
2 the deteriorating conditions ultimately reflected in fish
3 productivity, and at the other end, if you go beyond about
4 two-thirds or three quarters of the historic flow, if you
5 divert more than two-thirds or three-quarters, it appears
6 that these changes may be irreversible.

7 So, what this says for San Francisco Bay is that we
8 have not yet reached the level that appears to be
9 irreversible in other estuaries, and this is one of the
10 reasons that we were so interested in performing these
11 correlations and coming up with a recommendation that we
12 will discuss in a moment.

13 Q Let me now ask you some questions about the
14 conclusions and recommendations that you drew from your
15 analysis, Dr. Herz. Let's turn to Figure 8-1 which
16 follows page 146 of Exhibit 20. Let me ask you to explain
17 what this shows regarding the freshwater inflow standards
18 for the spring months that are necessary to maintain the
19 health of the San Francisco Bay fishery.

20 A In this case, we are saying that the various
21 correlations that we have performed require on the order
22 of a total of 6.9 to 7.5 million acre-feet each spring
23 averaged over two to three years in order to insure that
24 we get production of fish in the system.

25 And what this further shows is that in the

1 pre-project period spring runoff was, in fact, above these
2 levels that we say are necessary for successful catches.

3 In the current era of the post-project period, we
4 are slightly on an average over one, one and a quarter,
5 one and a half million acre-feet a year, which is far
6 below what we think is necessary and the projected year
7 2000 drops it down even further, so this is one of the
8 reasons that we feel that there has been a deterioration
9 in abundance of some of these species.

10 Q Now, when you say that your conclusions led you to
11 the recommendation of 6.9 to 7.5 million acre-feet, you
12 are talking about a level of flow over the entire
13 three-month period?

14 A During April, May and June, an equivalence of 38 to
15 42 thousand cubic feet per second at Chipps Island.

16 Q The figure before us here actually shows those
17 outflow requirements as a monthly requirement; does it
18 not?

19 A Yes, that's right.

20 Q How is that flow requirement that you have been
21 describing derived from the correlation data for salmon,
22 striped bass and shad that you were testifying about?

23 A Well, what we have done with these correlations is
24 to identify the range of water flows within which we found
25 that the majority of the data points are near the

1 mid-point of the regression, and then, we have averaged
2 this range for all of the regressions that are presented
3 in the report, and that leaves us with these numbers that
4 we are proposing or recommending.

5 Q So, the numbers that you were giving of 6.9 to 7.5
6 million acre-feet for the spring are computed, are they
7 not, from the correlations?

8 A That is right.

9 Q They are not simply estimates?

10 A That's right.

11 Q You say that you derived the inflow recommendations
12 by considering the mid-point of the correlations rather
13 than the levels of flow that optimize the fishery
14 populations; is that correct?

15 A That's right. We chose a level that we feel
16 recognizes the competing demands for what everybody sees
17 as a limited water supply, but at the same time, would
18 maintain the fishery. We want it to be noted that this
19 recommendation should be considered to be the bear minimum
20 that's needed to protect fisheries, and that's because in
21 biological investigations of this type the error band can
22 be on the order of as much as plus or minus 20 percent,
23 which means that the flow recommendations may actually be
24 20 percent less, that our recommendation may be 20 percent
25 less than what is necessary to maintain the fishery at a

1 mid-range level, and as you can see from the graphs or the
2 regression lines that we have presented, there is not a
3 large margin of error in the flows. Fifty percent of our
4 recommendations result in very very little, if any, fish
5 catch, so that flows of 50 percent of our recommendations
6 would have a catastrophic effect on fish abundance.

7 Given the inherent uncertainties, there's not
8 much margin for error and, therefore, our recommendations
9 usually the mid-point of these ranges should be seen as
10 fairly conservative.

11 Q To put these recommendations into context, what
12 percentage of the minimum unimpaired runoff is required to
13 meet the proposed spring flow standards?

14 A Approximately 64 to 70 percent.

15 Q Now, for the recommendation on annual flows, let's
16 turn to Figure 8-2. This annual flow recommendation of 17
17 to 19 million acre-feet is to be attained each year, not
18 averaged; is that right?

19 A That's correct.

20 Q What percentage of mean annual unimpaired runoff is
21 required to meet that proposed standard?

22 A About 63 to 70 percent.

23 Q And how is that flow requirement derived from the
24 correlation data for salmon, striped bass and shad that
25 you have described?

1 A In much the same way as it was done for the monthly
2 or springtime. We identified the range of flows around
3 which the majority of data points in the mid-range of the
4 regressions appear, and then, we averaged this range for
5 all of the regressions that we presented.

6 Q And again, the recommendation for annual flows is
7 based upon the average of the mid-range flows shown in the
8 regressions, not the level of flow that optimize the
9 fishery populations; is that right?

10 A That's right.

11 Q Dr. Leopold, if I could, at this time I would like
12 to ask you whether you have had an opportunity to examine
13 the Decision 1485 standards and whether you have an
14 opinion as to whether they would be or they are adequate
15 to provide the required level of inflow to protect the San
16 Francisco fishery resources?

17 DR. LEOPOLD: A The standards that are set up in
18 the water right decision are extremely complicated, and I
19 would imagine that the control board might want to look at
20 the whole question of what data are needed in the long
21 term to satisfy any standards. Not only does Decision
22 1485 call for a large number of different kinds of
23 measures, but particularly with some of them we are not
24 sure that is really what we ought to be measuring.

25 I spoke before about the question of salinity, and

1 I think one of the things that the control board might
2 want to think about is how the data collection affect over
3 the long term in the future, how it should be defined and
4 how it can be made uniformly consistent over a long period
5 of time. This is not easy to do.

6 Q All right. Dr. Herz, what are the implications of
7 the recommendations that you have stated for the operation
8 of the state and federal water projects?

9 DR. HERZ: A Well, what it says at a minimum is
10 there should not be any increase in the levels of
11 diversions out of the estuary. It certainly seems to
12 indicate there is a need for larger springtime releases
13 and probably the most difficult thing is that there is
14 going to be a requirement for a more equitable sharing of
15 the shortfall of water during the dry and critical years.

16 Q How do the Tiburon Center recommendations compare
17 to those recommended by the Fish and Wildlife Service?

18 A It's my understanding that they are relatively
19 similar because the Fish and Wildlife Service
20 recommendations for salmon are in the neighborhood of
21 30,000 cubic feet per second from the Sacramento and
22 12,000 from the San Joaquin during the springtime, which
23 seems to compare quite favorably with the numbers we are
24 recommending.

25 Q And those Fish and Wildlife Service standards were

1 recommendations that were for the purpose of protecting
2 the fishery as well, were they not?

3 A For the salmon, yes.

4 Q Are there further questions regarding the level of
5 freshwater needed to maintain the San Francisco fishery
6 resources that merit investigation?

7 A Well, based on our research here and on the
8 information from other estuaries, things are going
9 downhill. We can't let the resource totally collapse.
10 There must be at least interim standards to leave enough
11 water for the resource while further information is
12 gathered to determine what should be the final standards.

13 Q What is your view on how and who should perform
14 these additional investigations?

15 A Well, I think that the state board should require
16 that the consumptive users fund some sort of studies to
17 evaluate the damage that's already resulted. I think the
18 very large amounts of information that have been generated
19 by these hearings will also need to be evaluated by an
20 objective independent entity that has a broad perspective
21 and it would seem to me that the National Academy of
22 Sciences National Research Council kind of approach which
23 has been used in the last year or so with Kesterson, Mono
24 Lake and Lake Tahoe, is a good way to evaluate this mass
25 of information.

1 There has been a tremendous amount of information
2 that we have been discussing, even just in the inflow
3 hearing, and that needs to be evaluated with some level of
4 expertise and objectivity, and may require expertise that
5 is beyond the scope of people in California.

6 And finally, I would suggest that perhaps the state
7 board should request the Environmental Protection Agency
8 estuarine program to be involved in helping to design
9 studies and in-perpetuity monitoring of the system so we
10 can keep track of what's going on and what the
11 relationships are between flow and the resources.

12 Q That's suggests a final question for Dr. Leopold.
13 Dr. Leopold, having evaluated the D-1485 standards and
14 being a member of the National Academy of Sciences, do you
15 see merit in referring the problem of standard setting to
16 this expert body?

17 DR. LEOPOLD: A In the case of Lake Tahoe, only
18 recently did both Nevada and California decide that they
19 needed to have their basic data collection effort looked
20 at by an independent agency, they turned to the Water
21 Science and Technology Board of the National Research
22 Council and asked that an independent exhibit be set up to
23 study the question of basic data requirements.

24 D-1485 envisions a data-collection system, not only
25 so extensive and so complicated that I cannot imagine that

1 over a period of the next 30 or 40 years that we could
2 continue to carry out the data collection system that's
3 envisioned in 1485, I think it ought to be made simpler
4 and I think that the main idea in data collection for a
5 long term must relate to the processes by which the
6 eco-system operates, and therefore, as I see it, the
7 control board must visualize a review and extensive review
8 of the data-collection system itself, and the initiation
9 of studies that relate the data which are to be collected
10 to a better understanding of how the eco-system operates.

11 With all the material that we hear about the
12 relation of salinity, fisheries and water discharge
13 measured in different places at different times, we still
14 don't understand as much as we should about the processes,
15 about how this interaction works in the eco-system. And,
16 for that reason, I think that it would be well to consider
17 asking an independent organization like the National
18 Research Council to consider the matter of what data
19 should be collected and how a simplified data-collection
20 scheme is intimately related to what we presently
21 understand and what we should understand about the natural
22 processes within the eco-system itself.

23 MR. MAUGHAN: Mr. Thomas, Dr. Leopold referred to
24 data collection. I thought you said something about
25 referring to standard setting which I wondered if that was

1 properly the question you had in mind, or was it data?

2 MR. THOMAS: Well, let me just ask both of our
3 experts here to reflect further on that, if you would care
4 to

5 Q Is it simply the collection of data that you would
6 recommend be referred or the actual recommendation of
7 standards to protect the estuary?

8 DR. LEOPOLD: Standards depend on data. No matter
9 how you set the standards, and the standards are going to
10 be of such a nature that if flows or chemical or
11 biological data show certain things, then certain steps
12 must follow and, therefore, the question of setting
13 standards is very closely related to the basic
14 data-collection effort itself.

15 Regardless of how the standards are to be written,
16 they are all going to be related to data collection; in
17 other words, data availability, and that's why I say the
18 two have to be considered together.

19 MR. THOMAS: We recognize, of course, Mr. Chairman,
20 that the statutory responsibility for setting protective
21 standards for the estuary lies with this board and not
22 with the National Academy of Sciences.

23 MR. MAUGHAN: I was wondering if you were
24 suggesting switching. I am quite serious.

25 MR. THOMAS: That's not a part of the suggestion.

1 I believe that the suggestion is that not only the
2 collection of data, but also, the interpretation and
3 translation into public policy is a matter on which the
4 National Academy might beneficially register, and what you
5 would receive would be recommendations, certainly not the
6 final and binding standards from such a body.

7 DR. HERZ: In fact, if you take the Mono Lake, the
8 recent National Research Council study of Mono Lake, they
9 essentially identified issues and set up a set of flow
10 levels or lake levels and discussed potential impacts of
11 these different flow levels or lake levels on these, if
12 you will, beneficial uses, so it is very comparable.

13 They did not, and I think they would probably balk
14 at being asked to make recommendations.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: I wanted the record to be clear what
16 the distinction is.

17 DR. HERZ: What I was envisioning was something
18 like that, would be to outline the critical questions and
19 to make some evaluation of the large mass of data. I
20 mean, I think that's the basic place where a group like
21 the National Research Council could be of great
22 assistance.

23 MR. MAUGHAN: All right.

24 MR. THOMAS: Mr. Chairman, that completes our
25 direct testimony.

1 MR. MAUGHAN: Well, I think this is an appropriate
2 time to take a 15-minute break.

3 (Recess)

4 MR. MAUGHAN: Let's go ahead.

5 MR. SMAAGE: Denis Smaage, Department of Fish and
6 Game.

7 At the cross-examination in Concord, the Department
8 of Fish and Game was asked to add additional data to
9 Exhibit 60A concerning the abundance of bay shrimp
10 historically, and we have done that by adding six years of
11 data from 1980 to 1986, and I would like to offer that
12 exhibit in evidence at this time.

13 MR. MAUGHAN: That was requested so I don't know
14 that there is any objection. Hearing none, that completes
15 that, Mr. Smaage?

16 MR. SMAAGE: Thank you.

17 MR. SCHULZ: Mr. Chairman, while Mr. Smaage was
18 talking, during the cross-examination of their witnesses
19 on striped bass, I asked for some information from Fish
20 and Game as to the raw data that they used to correlate
21 various indices as to how many fish equaled what index.

22 MR. MAUGHAN: And they haven't done so?

23 MR. SCHULZ: They haven't done so.

24 MR. SMAAGE: Do you know which witness you asked
25 that of?

1 MR. SCHULZ: Striped bass -- Stevens.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, that's in the record. I
3 would just request Mr. Smaage to remind Mr. Stevens.

4 MR. SMAAGE: Thank you for reminding me.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, Mr. Littleworth, I think
6 you are first up to bat.

7 MR. LITTLEWORTH: I have just a few questions for
8 Dr. Leopold. The contractors, in order to try to
9 facilitate things, are going to defer the major
10 cross-examination to Mr. Somach, but I have a few
11 questions.

12 MR. THOMAS: Before Mr. Littleworth begins, I
13 wonder if I might clarify for the record the source of one
14 of the exhibits which I apparently failed to identify
15 during direct examination.

16 Referring to the chart that Dr. Leopold testified
17 to entitled "Inflow to Delta, 1921 to 1982, Percentage of
18 Years of Different Supplies of Water," that is Figure 2
19 from the Tiburon Center Exhibit No. 22.

20 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, I think that's clear
21 enough.

22 Does staff find that clear?

23 MR. TAMBLYN: Yes.

24 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. You may proceed, Mr.
25 Littleworth.

CROSS-EXAMINATION

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

by MR. LITTLEWORTH:

Q Dr. Leopold, your analysis was based on data which you were furnished. You didn't do any original data-collection work?

Dr. Leopold A No, I didn't, sir.

Q And did I understand also that when you were using the term "natural flow," that that, in fact, was what the Department of Water Resources had described as unimpaired flow?

A That is correct.

Q And that's the calculations that showed an average of 28 million acre-feet annually?

A Yes, sir.

Q And then, to get the regulated flow what you did was to subtract the depletions, as you called, exports and so forth, from that unimpaired flow?

A That was my definition of depletions, the subtraction.

Q Well, you, in fact, took the 28, the unimpaired flow figures and then you subtracted the upstream uses and by exports?

A No, I took the difference between the two sets of data that were furnished to me, the outflow data tabulated by years and the unimpaired data year by year, and

1 subtracted them.

2 Q So, you got the depletions in a backward way then?

3 A Yes, sir.

4 Q By comparing the unimpaired flow and --

5 A The tabulated --

6 Q The tabulated outflow?

7 A Yes.

8 Q I take it you didn't look then at the State Water
9 Contractors' Exhibit 260A which purported to show actual
10 Delta outflow over this period?

11 A I was not shown that at the time I wrote my report.

12 Q Now, are you aware, Dr. Leopold, that the
13 conditions under which, or the assumptions under which the
14 unimpaired flow was calculated included no storage and
15 upstream reservoirs, no use by agriculture or cities, but
16 that it did include the present-day levees and
17 channelization?

18 A I understood that, yes.

19 Q And you would agree that that, in fact, was not
20 what the state looked like in, say, around the 1800s or
21 early 1900s?

22 A Yes. I was having to use the data that were
23 furnished to me.

24 Q Are you aware that the Department of Water
25 Resources in reaching that unimpaired flow average of 29

1 million acre-feet annually used a consumptive use of two
2 acre-feet per acre for everything except in the Delta
3 itself?

4 A Actually, I did not know how that computation was
5 made. I was only furnished -- since I came in very late
6 in this; in other words, I never saw the report until the
7 summer. I did not have a chance to evaluate how that
8 tabulation was actually arrived at.

9 Q I appreciate you are in a pinch-hitter role here
10 today. Are you aware that in the natural condition of the
11 state if you used natural conditions, say, for the year
12 1800, that there were very large tule marsh areas and
13 large riparian forest areas?

14 A Yes, I'm aware of that.

15 Q And do you understand what the State Contractors,
16 did was simply to adjust the consumptive use figures which
17 the Department of Water Resources had used by the
18 estimated use of the tule marshes and by the riparian
19 forests?

20 A Yes. I could see how it was done. The problem
21 that I have is that the net result is so much larger than
22 anything that has been measured directly in any previous
23 investigation, but I am not able to say what part of the
24 analysis I would have questioned.

25 Q You would agree, I am sure, that a tule marsh area

1 or large riparian forest would actually have a consumptive
2 use higher than two acre-feet per year; wouldn't it?

3 A Yes, under conditions where potential evaporation
4 was possible.

5 Q And if the consumptive use figures used by the
6 Department of Water Resources to reach their unimpaired
7 flows were, in fact, larger, then the 28 million acre-feet
8 average inflow would be something less; wouldn't it?

9 A Yes, but as I say, I did not know the assumptions
10 that they made.

11 Q I understand. I just want to get, if, in fact, the
12 consumptive use figures used by the Department of Water
13 Resources underestimated the actual consumptive use, you
14 would, in fact, get a lower flow than the 28 million
15 acre-feet; wouldn't you?

16 A Presumably their computation could be redone using
17 another set of assumptions, yes.

18 Q And if, in fact, the 28 million acre-feet were
19 something less than that number, then, in fact, that would
20 change virtually all of the tables and exhibits and so
21 forth which you used; wouldn't it?

22 A I don't think so. It might change the numbers but
23 the main thing that the frequency analysis brings out is
24 the distribution around the mean, above and below the
25 mean, so the shape of the curve would not necessarily have

1 changed regardless of the fact that the average value has
2 been made different.

3 Q But it would change all the numbers themselves?

4 A They would be changed in proportion, yes.

5 MR. LITTLEWORTH: Thank you.

6 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. Mr. Turner, do you
7 represent anyone that would like to cross-examine, like
8 the Geological Survey, Fish and Wildlife Service or the
9 Bureau of Reclamation, any of those agencies?

10 MR. TURNER: As a matter of fact, Mr. Chairman, I
11 am representing all three today as well, and I just had a
12 couple of questions, if I could.

13 MR. MAUGHAN: Sure, you are next.

14 CROSS-EXAMINATION

15 by MR. TURNER:

16 Q I have, like I said, a couple of questions for
17 clarification. I was wondering if I might get you, Dr.
18 Herz, to turn to -- I don't have the revised version of
19 Exhibit 20, but I presume it is probably still on the
20 final page, the recommendations in Exhibit 20, and I
21 presume your final report, larger report, says the same
22 thing as this.

23 You are proposing the establishment of criteria of
24 annual flows of no less than 17 million acre-feet, and
25 then going on, for a period of at least two to three

1 consecutive years. I am trying to get a little bit more
2 clarification as to how we would compute the actual time
3 period during which those annual flows were to be
4 maintained.

5 DR. HERZ: Well, I think in terms of a criterion or
6 a standard, that would be more binding and more
7 measurable. Our spring flow numbers are the ones that we
8 proposed as playing that role, providing that function.

9 The annual figures are less, I didn't want to say,
10 enforceable, but not as much -- well, I just think from
11 our perspective what we have recommended, the spring flows
12 are the ones that we feel are the most useful in terms of
13 protecting the system and that the annual flows are -- I
14 certainly don't want to say less precise, but because they
15 are stated in annual flow, million acre-feet, not cubic
16 feet per second during specific seasons, it is more
17 difficult to utilize them as a regulatory kind of number.

18 Q So, I take it then that these annual flows, the
19 maintenance of that annual flow is not tied to the type of
20 water year or it is not tied to which percentile that
21 particular type of water year fits?

22 The reason, obviously, that I am concerned, we are
23 trying to figure out what amount of acre-feet of water is
24 going to be necessary during the historic and projected
25 Water year conditions to actually satisfy these

1 recommended criteria of 17 to 19 million acre-feet in
2 various years.

3 I was wanting to try to get what kind of guidance I
4 could to analyze what the impacts would be.

5 DR. HERZ: Well, you are correct in your statement
6 that we have not tied those numbers to any year-type
7 classification, and I am not prepared to go into greater
8 detail. I am not the hydrologist and I think, if
9 necessary, it may become necessary to submit questions on
10 the hydrology to Dr. Rozengurt in writing, and I don't
11 know whether it is permissible to have that become part of
12 the record or what, but we did not plan to have Dr.
13 Rozengurt in the hospital during this proceeding.

14 Q Okay. Well, that would be fine. I would
15 appreciate it.

16 Let me move on to the spring flows. I wanted to
17 make sure that you were talking about mean monthly flows
18 of at least 2 to 2.5 million acre-feet, and that's in your
19 direct testimony. I just wanted to make sure you were
20 saying that would equate to this approximately 6.9 to 7.5
21 million acre-feet during the spring period, so these are
22 monthly flows, not seasonal flows?

23 DR. HERZ: That is right, 2.3 to 2.5 for each of
24 the three spring months, April, May and June, 2.3 to 2.5
25 times 3.

1 Q And then, again, maybe I will get the same
2 response, but are you talking about maintaining those
3 particular flows in each of those months again during
4 those two to three consecutive year periods, or is this
5 supposed to be all across the board?

6 DR. HERZ: No, for a period of at least two to
7 three years.

8 Q It is not tied to any specific type of year?

9 DR. HERZ: It is not tied to any particular type of
10 year, that is correct.

11 Q Okay. The only other thing I wanted to ask is I
12 believe I heard you say on your direct testimony that one
13 of the things that you felt showed that the relationship
14 between flows and the fish populations was not just a
15 matter of coincidence, but that you were showing some kind
16 of similar relationships with respect to the salmon,
17 striped bass, shad, more than just one species; is that
18 correct?

19 DR. HERZ: That is correct.

20 Q What I was concerned about, as I understood it,
21 were you not using different criteria or different
22 measuring devices to determine the relationship between
23 flow in each of those individual species? For example,
24 using running means or running averages of certain periods
25 for one species, but using a different running average of

1 flows for another species, using one lag time for one
2 species, but using a different lag time for another
3 species?

4 DR. HERZ: If you look closely at the figures that
5 we presented, I think you will find that the three-to-
6 five-year period that we talk about is represented in the
7 means and lags combined, so that our recommendations of
8 this two-to-three consecutive years is based on the fact
9 that we consistently found that you got optimum
10 relationships between flows and these various measures of
11 fish abundance with lags or periods of three to five
12 years, and the periods include both the period that is
13 averaged, the number of running years of flow and the lag
14 between the end of that period on the catch, so three to
15 five years predominates.

16 Q Okay. I guess I was trying to be as up front as
17 possible. It seemed to me you are saying, for example,
18 that you get a high correlation between flows and salmon
19 catch or salmon populations when you are using a
20 three-year running average of flows, and you are using --
21 what was it, a two-year lag time between the time of the
22 flow and the population count. You then say you use a
23 five-year running average for striped bass and you use a
24 two-year running average for shad.

25 It seemed if you were going to vary the periods of

1 averaging flows and the lag times, are you not just saying
2 if you pick up some arbitrary flow period, some arbitrary
3 lag period, you can always show there is going to be a
4 relationship when you change the criteria you are using to
5 establish the relationship?

6 DR. HERZ: No, not at all. I think what we are
7 saying, as I tried to make clear in the direct testimony,
8 is that the system is an accumulative one, that it's not
9 the effects of this season's water only on this year's
10 fish, that there are cumulative effects, and we did not
11 take an infinite array of possible mean periods and lags.
12 We zeroed in on this three-to-five-year period as the
13 period that we felt made the most sense because most of
14 these species when they are mature and when they return to
15 the estuary to spawn are in that age range and, therefore,
16 we thought that it made biological sense and was not at
17 all arbitrary, and I would also like to add that what we
18 found with other scatter plots and correlations that we
19 attempted correlating was a given year's flow with given
20 year's catch was that those relationships did not hold up.

21 That is why we went to these lags, and I should
22 also point out that these means and lags are used
23 successfully as a description of relationships between
24 flow and productivity in a variety of estuaries.

25 I have a list with me of about 20 to 25

1 publications on flow-productivity or flow-fish abundance
2 or flow-catch relationships in other estuaries in this
3 country and abroad that showed the same thing.

4 So, this is not at all an arbitrary procedure that
5 we are using. It's one which has been used in a variety
6 of biological systems by a variety of fisheries biologists
7 and fishery statisticians as a technique for showing
8 relationships between flow and production.

9 Q Well, let me, I guess, complete by asking one last
10 question. If you look, for example, just to take Figure
11 5-11 in Exhibit 20, one of the figures you made reference
12 to in your testimony and in that particular exhibit you
13 say the catch is lagged by three years, and you have
14 versus the mean spring regulated Delta outflow -- was that
15 a running average or was this the actual flow in each of
16 those years?

17 DR. HERZ: It's a mean of the three running years
18 for the spring period with a three-year lag.

19 Q That's what I thought. Now, my question would be,
20 did you utilize that same criteria using the same running
21 average and the two-year lag and try to graph how that
22 affected striped bass, shad? This relates to salmon. If
23 we use the same kind of running average and use the same
24 lag period, what kind of correlations do you get between
25 those flows and the striped bass and shad populations?

1 Did you try using those figures?

2 DR. HERZ: I'm sure we did. It would take me some
3 time to go through to find the appropriate comparison.
4 Again, the bottom line is that although we did not use
5 precisely a three-year running mean and a two-year lag, or
6 a two-year running mean and a three-year lag every time,
7 the three-to-five-year period was the one we focused on
8 because we felt it made biological sense, and that is the
9 place where we seem to have gotten our strongest
10 associations.

11 MR. TURNER: I would have no further questions.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: Mr. Smaage, do you have any
13 questions?

14 MR. SMAAGE: We have no questions.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: Mr. Anderson?

16 CROSS-EXAMINATION

17 by MR. ANDERSON:

18 Q The first question that I have relates to a
19 statement that Dr. Herz made regarding some nameless
20 testimony that was given at the bay inflow hearings in
21 Concord. I believe you are probably referring to
22 testimony by Ed Huntley of the Department of Water
23 Resources. I assume that's the case.

24 DR. HERZ: It was nameless because it was just
25 reported to me second or third-hand.

1 Q My recollection is that the only testimony about
2 the Sea of Azov was given by Mr. Huntley and since you
3 characterize his testimony a certain way, I would like to
4 clarify that.

5 If you look at the record, you find Mr. Huntley did
6 not say the Sea of Azov does not communicate with the
7 Black Sea. He very specifically said, in speaking of the
8 great differences between those two bodies of water, the
9 Sea of Azov and the San Francisco Bay and the
10 comparability of the two. He pointed out the great
11 differences in the average depth of the Strait of Kerch
12 and the Golden Gate, the former being 20 feet on average
13 and the latter being 200 feet on average.

14 He also pointed out the great difference in area of
15 the Sea of Azov being 14,700 square miles and the bay
16 being 400 square miles.

17 He also pointed out the maximum tide range of the
18 Sea of Azov being .7 feet and the bay being 11 feet.

19 Do you agree or disagree with those statements?

20 DR. HERZ: Of the authors of this report I am not
21 the most knowledgeable about the Sea of Azov. I suspect
22 that those figures are probably correct.

23 I would ask a couple of additional questions, for
24 example, in addition to the depth of the straits, the
25 breadth of the straits and the area that is under the

1 influence of the tide is of extreme importance as well.

2 Q I wanted to go on. I note that in the
3 qualifications neither you nor Dr. Rozengurt are fishery
4 biologists; is that correct?

5 DR. HERZ: That's true, although Dr. Rozengurt in
6 his training in the Soviet Union took a large number of
7 courses in fishery biology, fish physiology. He, in
8 addition, collaborated with people in the institute in the
9 Soviet Union who were doing research on fisheries
10 questions for some 20 or 21 years. He did this work and
11 was working closely with them and published something on
12 the order of somewhat over 40 publications on the
13 relationship between oceanography, hydrology and fisheries
14 problems.

15 Q Let me ask you this: Did you have the material on
16 fisheries that you presented here reviewed by fisheries
17 people, bypassing the question of whether Dr. Rozengurt is
18 an expert, other fisheries experts to determine its
19 technical accuracy?

20 DR. HERZ: Certainly, we had this report reviewed.

21 MR. MAUGHAN: Dr. Herz, would you sort of speak
22 into the microphone.

23 DR. HERZ: I said, certainly, we did have it
24 reviewed.

25 MR. ANDERSON: Q How would you characterize the

1 comments that you received? Were they favorable, were
2 they incorporated into your report?

3 DR. HERZ: We had a range of responses. Whenever
4 you submit something to peer review, that's what you get,
5 and the purpose of a peer review process is to get as much
6 constructive criticism as you can to strengthen what you
7 have. We got a variety of comments. Some said that they
8 felt that the procedure used on the results that we came
9 up with were quite consistent with what they thought they
10 should be. There were several who felt that the techniques
11 were quite appropriate and indicated that they were not
12 unlike the techniques used in other systems, as I have
13 already indicated.

14 In addition, we did receive a number of comments
15 and suggestions about different statistical techniques,
16 very specific things that we might have done, some of
17 which we integrated into the final report, some we chose
18 not to, that we felt we could answer their criticisms
19 without making a major change.

20 Q In your analysis of fisheries, did you try to
21 separate the bay effects from the upstream effects?

22 DR. HERZ: Can you expand a little on the question?

23 Q When you take a look at the state of the fisheries
24 over historical periods, some defects might be some of the
25 environmental impacts or the outside impacts on the

1 populations might be occurring in the bay, and some of
2 them might be occurring upstream of the bay.

3 DR. HERZ: We were looking primarily at the effects
4 of Delta outflow on levels of catch and levels of
5 production of the species. So, to the degree that what was
6 happening upstream of the bay was influencing Delta
7 outflow, yes, we did consider that.

8 Q If what was happening upstream was happening at the
9 same time that changes in outflow were occurring, then you
10 might not be able to distinguish which factor was the
11 cause of any change that you discerned.

12 DR. HERZ: We were looking at the relationship
13 between modifications in flow and levels of productivity.
14 We did not choose to do anything other than that to make
15 any interpretation of the results that you want, but what
16 we were looking at was the effects of changes in
17 management and outflow as a result of management on the
18 number of fish in the system.

19 Q You would agree the distinction between factors
20 occurring upstream and factors occurring in the bay
21 downstream would be important to make?

22 DR. HERZ: If you are talking about the amount of
23 water that is there to influence the resources, I don't
24 think it makes much difference where that change takes
25 place.

1 Q I am talking about things other than the amount of
2 water, the state of the habitat upstream, perhaps
3 degradation may have occurred concomitantly with some of
4 the effects you observed.

5 DR. HERZ: If I understand the changes in habitat
6 correctly, most of those changes had occurred before the
7 more contemporary period of analysis that we performed
8 and, therefore, can't be attributed as being responsible
9 for the flow-productivity relationships that we
10 demonstrate for the contemporary post-project period.

11 Q Let's move on. Are you aware of the problems the
12 Department of Fish and Game mentioned previously regarding
13 the use of catch data in analyzing abundance trends?

14 DR. HERZ: Since time immemorial, people have been
15 aware of problems with fish-catch data, yes.

16 Q So, you are aware of those also when you offer them
17 to the board with those necessary qualifications.

18 DR. HERZ: Yes. I should point out, however, that
19 I am told that the Department of Fish and Game spends 1.1
20 million dollars a year to collect fish-catch statistics,
21 and it is stated throughout the literature there are
22 statements such as despite their limitations, fish-catch
23 statistics are of extreme value in terms of estimating
24 changes in productivity of systems and in many places
25 throughout the world there is nothing other than

1 fish-catch data to use as a research management tool. We
2 fully accept the fact that they are not the absolute best
3 data, they are not as carefully collected as research
4 data, but fishery people throughout the world use them
5 with that knowledge.

6 Q Just to round this out, wouldn't you agree that
7 when the Department of Fish and Game spends over a million
8 dollars on acquiring catch data, it is not to use it
9 exclusively? It supplements and adds to other data that
10 are acquired, and that's not an indication they,
11 therefore, believe that strict reliance on catch data is a
12 good measure of abundance?

13 DR. HERZ: Absolutely, that is one of the reasons
14 that we use a variety of different measures of abundance
15 of fish in the system and didn't just restrict our
16 analysis to catch data.

17 Q I hope this isn't repetitive of an answer you gave
18 to Mr. Turner, but this has to do with the biological
19 justification for an analysis which uses various life
20 periods of catch abundance. For example, chinook salmon,
21 could you tell me what lag periods and what averaging
22 interval you would use with chinook salmon, and can you
23 tell me how this works biologically with a species that at
24 most spends only a few months and usually only a few days
25 in the bay?

1 DR. HERZ: What we used for most of our averages
2 and most of our analyses, the ones that showed the
3 strongest relationship again were the three-to-five-year
4 range, if you combine both the flow period averaged and
5 the lag.

6 I think the important part of your question is,
7 though, that regardless of how much time fish spend in the
8 system, and I think it is usually considerably more than
9 several days, the conditions that they encounter while
10 they are in the system are not simply the flow of that few
11 days or weeks or months, but according to the basic
12 premise on which our work rests, it is a cumulative system
13 and the conditions are established by flow conditions that
14 are preceded by as much as a number of years, and that's
15 why we used the procedure we did.

16 Q Do you know how many races of chinook salmon are
17 found in the Central Valley system?

18 DR. HERZ: I'm not a fisheries biologist. That's
19 not one of the areas that I can comment on.

20 Q Well, let me suggest to you that prior testimony
21 indicates there are four, and my question, perhaps without
22 knowing the precise number, you could still be able to
23 answer, I don't know. Given that there are several races
24 of salmon, do you know if they all migrate through the
25 system up and down at the same time?

1 DR. HERZ: Of course, they do not. They are named
2 by the different runs, the different time of the year that
3 they make their migrations.

4 Q Would you expect similar flow-abundance
5 relationships with all four races?

6 DR. HERZ: I can't really address that question
7 because we really only looked at the fall run and it
8 should be noted the fall run migrate out of the system
9 during the spring season, so there's reason to believe
10 spring-flow conditions are relevant to their life cycle.

11 Q But may not be relevant at all to the life cycles
12 of other races?

13 DR. HERZ: If the system functions the way we
14 believe it does, as an accumulative averaging system, then
15 it should influence all races, but we have been led to
16 believe that only the fall run is a large, significant
17 part of the salmon fishery -- I mean the salmon production
18 in the system. Therefore, we focused our attention on
19 that race, and also, because there were data available on
20 the return migrations for that race.

21 Q Do I understand correctly it is your testimony that
22 some cumulative or long-term average of slows in the
23 springtime can be used as an indicator of survival of
24 other than fall-run salmon; is that what you just said?

25 DR. HERZ: I didn't say survival.

1 Q Health, abundance?

2 DR. HERZ: Abundance, yes.

3 Q Were you present when the Department of Fish and
4 Game and Fish and Wildlife Service presented their
5 testimony on striped bass, salmon and shad?

6 DR. HERZ: I was not.

7 Q Notwithstanding that, would you be able to tell the
8 board whether your analysis is intended to supplement or
9 replace the fish agencies' testimony?

10 DR. HERZ: I don't know that we view it as doing
11 either of those things. We view it as an independent
12 analysis, an analysis using techniques that were somewhat
13 different than what anybody else was using?

14 Q Have you discussed your analysis with the
15 Department of Fish and Game?

16 DR. HERZ: Yes.

17 Q What has been their reaction?

18 DR. HERZ: Various reactions from various people at
19 various times.

20 Q Dr. Leopold, I have some questions for you. I have
21 some questions on the four-basin index. In your
22 testimony, your written testimony, on the first page, and
23 perhaps a little bit you might have to answer for Dr.
24 Rozengurt, if you are able to, in some of his
25 presentations -- you say that the data base was reviewed

1 in some detail. It appears that during the planning and
2 construction stages of water development and diversions in
3 the Sacramento system, two data compilations were used,
4 the four-basin index and a previous one, which I guess is
5 referred to as the Shasta index; isn't that correct, that
6 these two, Shasta and four-basin index, were essentially
7 developed, promulgated in about 1965 for the Shasta, and
8 around 1976 for the four-basin index?

9 DR. LEOPOLD: That's my understanding.

10 Q Can you tell me if you have knowledge of this, in
11 what fashion these indexes were, in fact, used in the
12 planning and construction of the project?

13 DR. LEOPOLD: I can't answer that from the Tiburon
14 report.

15 Q I see.

16 DR. LEOPOLD: That's the reason that I went on to
17 make my own analysis of the data.

18 Q Is this statement in the Tiburon report -- I'm
19 referring actually back to, I guess it is their Exhibit
20 No. 1, page 1.39, that says: It is interesting to note
21 that despite this obvious inconsistency, the Shasta flow
22 year-type classification was used as the environmental
23 background during one of the most important periods of
24 California's water development when the major water
25 facilities were built and numerous contract obligations

1 were adopted.

2 Do you recall if that's the reference that you
3 relied upon?

4 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, I think that's the reference.

5 Q That really doesn't say that the projects either in
6 planning or construction relied upon them, it says they
7 occurred at the same time.

8 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, that's correct.

9 Q So, getting right down to the four-basin index
10 itself, I want to refer to Exhibit 21. It's No. 8. I
11 think this is the central point that is being made here.
12 I am also going to be referring to Exhibit 20 in these
13 references.

14 I would like you to keep in mind Figure 31
15 following page 8 in Exhibit 21, and it follows page 43 in
16 Exhibit 20. This is the same figure used in both and it
17 is referred to in these quotes, and these are quotes --
18 item 8 from page 7 of Exhibit 21, and I would like to get
19 your reaction to this in total: Current decisions,
20 including D-1485 regarding water distribution in
21 California, are based on water-type classification system,
22 four-river index, which excludes 25 percent of the
23 Sacramento-San Joaquin rivershed. As a result, the normal
24 long-term mean four-river index runoff, and it has $Q=17.2$
25 million acre-feet, in 1921-1978 account for only 61

1 percent of the normal Sacramento-San Joaquin River inflow
2 to the Delta originating from 100 percent of the basin,
3 and it shows a Q average of 20.2 million acre-feet.

4 Therefore, evaluation of wetness of the years,
5 residual runoff and consequent planning for water
6 diversions based on the four-river index overestimates the
7 level of water availability in a manner incompatible with
8 the relatively meager natural levels of runoff, and I
9 understand natural to be unimpaired.

10 And then a similar conclusion that is made with
11 reference to this same point in this same graph, Exhibit
12 20, is that -- and this is underlined, this illustrates,
13 however, the four-river index water year type
14 classification system on which D-1485 is based biases
15 potential decision making by classifying dry years as
16 normal or wet, thereby minimizing the significance of
17 alarmingly low outflows to the bay over the last decade
18 and promoting an erroneous conclusion about the existence
19 of water surpluses when there are none.

20 Isn't what is happening here, a comparison of the
21 two figures, and let's refer to Figure 31, is that they
22 are taking 17.2 million on the left, which is classified
23 in the four-river-basin index as a normal year, and a line
24 is being drawn over to that same point on the right which
25 is the unimpaired inflow to the Delta, and saying this is

1 really not a normal year, this is really a subnormal year
2 or a day year?

3 Is that your understanding of the point that's
4 being made here?

5 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, and that's the reason I made my
6 own independent analysis of this because I did not attempt
7 to determine whether the four-river index was comparable
8 to using a whole record, so that what I did was I made a
9 comparison of the Department of Water Resources historical
10 inflow from the Sacramento valley, that's DWR Table 7, for
11 the 45-year period 1922 to 1966. For that, in the board's
12 Decision 1485, a definition was set up of dry, below
13 normal, wet, based on the Sacramento valley data. Then, I
14 wanted to compare that with the previously designated year
15 classification of critical, below normal, above normal,
16 and I found the following thing which I said in my
17 previous testimony .

18 MR. THOMAS: Excuse me, if you are referring to a
19 figure there, I believe we can display it here in the
20 hearing room.

21 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, it's this one here. What I
22 wanted to know was if you --

23 MS. LEIDIGH: Can you use the figure number or
24 something?

25 DR. HERZ: Exhibit 31.

1 MR. THOMAS: This exhibit has not been previously
2 referred to. We can give an exhibit number for the
3 record, if you wish.

4 MR. ANDERSON: Actually, if I could, Mr. Chairman,
5 and I appreciate your forthcoming explanation, but I did
6 understand your testimony. I believe I understand how it
7 does differ from Dr. Rozengurt's, so I really don't need a
8 clarification of that, so I don't think we do need to go
9 into it.

10 Q So, what I want to ask you is, do you understand
11 the four-river-basin index to be an index of water
12 availability in the system?

13 DR. LEOPOLD: I presume, but as I say, I did not
14 study the actual data for the four-river-basin index. I
15 understood it was an index, a surrogate for the total
16 flow.

17 Q And is it your testimony that you have any reason
18 to believe it's not a good index or not a good surrogate?

19 DR. LEOPOLD: No, I cannot tell you that because I
20 did not make a comparison in my own writing.

21 Q So, you are not able to agree or disagree with the
22 criticism that I just made?

23 DR. LEOPOLD: No, I am not.

24 Q Dr. Herz, are you able to shed some light on this?

25 DR. HERZ: It's my understanding that the basic

1 purpose of this figure, and basic criticism of the
2 difference between the two systems, is to point out the
3 fact that it is not only an index, but in determining how
4 much water is diverted each year, the four-river index
5 numbers are used to determine what year type
6 classification each year is, and there is a bias built
7 into that which ends up resulting in the bay getting less
8 water than it would if the whole system were used.

9 Q I believe that's absolutely incorrect. You have
10 evidence that it is used as an index of diversion or
11 depletion of historic inflow to the Delta? It is, in
12 fact, an index of total water availability; is it not?

13 DR. HERZ: But that is not the issue I am
14 addressing here. What I am addressing is my understanding
15 that the Department of Water Resources each year makes a
16 determination as to the year type we are experiencing and
17 based on that determination a decision or a set of
18 decisions is made regarding how much water can be exported
19 from the system, and it is my understanding from my
20 collaboration with Dr. Rozengurt that the point he is
21 trying to make here is that this system of using only the
22 four-river index rather than the full basin as a basis
23 upon which this determination or classification is made
24 ends up creating a bias such that more water can be
25 diverted out of the system in drier years than would be

1 possible if the classification system were based on the
2 entire watershed.

3 Q So, you don't think any index would be adequate,
4 you would demand the full measurement of -- I don't know
5 how you do that -- full measurement of available water
6 than using an index of available water?

7 DR. HERZ: Certainly, in terms of establishing the
8 year-type classification, because that's the principal
9 point that we were addressing at this point, and the
10 four-river index may be a reasonable surrogate, as Dr.
11 Leopold would say, but that's not the issue.

12 Q Would you agree, Dr. Herz, that the issue is for
13 the board to in some fashion determine what water is
14 totally available, and then, to determine what uses ought
15 to get that water in some sense, and in that sense, the
16 fact that the Department of Water Resources or the Bureau
17 of Reclamation, or anyone else, relies upon that
18 determination through an index is absolutely proper and
19 appropriate?

20 DR. HERZ: But we are talking apples and oranges
21 here. I am talking purely and simply about the basis upon
22 which a classification calling a year dry, critically dry,
23 average, whatever, and you are talking about a measurement
24 tool, and I am not addressing the measurement aspect. I
25 am addressing the degree to which the classification

1 system is biased because it uses the smaller four-river
2 index in terms of what kind of a year we have.

3 Q But an index, the fact that numbers in an index are
4 smaller than the actual flow is no bias; is it?

5 DR. HERZ: That's what an index is, one number that
6 stands for another.

7 MR. MAUGHAN: I'm not sure we are going to make
8 much more progress.

9 MR. ANDERSON: I have no more questions then.

10 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, Mr. Anderson.

11 Mr. Sanger, do you have any questions?

12 CROSS-EXAMINATION

13 by MR. SANGER:

14 Q Dr. Herz, just following up on the last question,
15 isn't it true that there is a table in a prior submission
16 by Romberg Tiburon Center in its earlier testimony on
17 hydrology that actually shows that years that were
18 classified by the Department of Water Resources as being
19 years of a certain type in accordance with the four-river
20 index turned out to not have the same frequency
21 distribution when total flows were used as the basis for
22 classification?

23 DR. HERZ: Yes, that is right, and that is what
24 produces the bias to which I was speaking a moment ago,
25 and ends up with a higher proportion of dry years and a

1 higher amount of water being permitted to be diverted out
2 of the system because the year-type classification is
3 different with the four-river index than it would be if
4 the full basin --

5 Q You mean a higher proportion of dry years if total
6 flows are taken into account?

7 DR. HERZ: Yes.

8 MR. SANGER: Thank you.

9 MR. THOMAS: For the record, the reference that Mr.
10 Sanger made is to Figure 3-1; isn't it?

11 DR. HERZ: Yes, that is correct, 3-1, Exhibit 20.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: Mr. Nakagawa, do you have questions?

13 MR. NAKAGAWA: No questions, Mr. Chairman.

14 MR. MAUGHAN: Mr. Dawdy, do you have any questions?

15 MR. DAWDY: I would like to ask a couple of
16 questions.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: Then, Mr. Somach will be next.

18 CROSS-EXAMINATION

19 by MR. DAWDY:

20 Q I am representing David Dawdy.

21 I would like to ask Dr. Leopold a couple of
22 questions. There was a question about the unimpaired flow
23 index that the Department of Water Resources used two
24 acre-feet per acre in their adjustment to obtain that
25 figure. It was intimated that perhaps those figures could

1 be wrong. It was intimated they may be too low and,
2 therefore, the results might be wrong. Based on the
3 Department of Water Resources' results, I would ask two
4 questions: Do you have any reason to think that the
5 Department of Water Resources has repudiated its
6 computations of the unimpaired flow index?

7 DR. LEOPOLD: Not to my knowledge.

8 Q If they were wrong, could they be wrong large or
9 wrong small?

10 DR. LEOPOLD: Presumably you would have to make a
11 study of both the area covered by different vegetation
12 types and a careful comparison of the tule evapo-
13 transpiration loss for each type by season; in other
14 words, because it cannot be assumed that the evapo-
15 transpiration is uniform either from year to year or
16 through seasons.

17 I'm not sure that answers your question.

18 Q I think it does.

19 And don't you think that's probably what the
20 Department of Water Resources did in deriving their
21 figures?

22 DR. LEOPOLD: One presumes so because that's about
23 how you would go about it.

24 MR. MAUGHAN: This is speculation, Dr. Leopold. It
25 doesn't help the record.

1 that?

2 MR. THOMAS: We sent the record number to the staff
3 for distribution to the exhibit centers.

4 MR. MAUGHAN: I see some shaking of heads.

5 MR. THOMAS: We have the correspondence that will
6 confirm that and we also provided the revised version to
7 adequate parties.

8 MR. JOHNSTON: No.

9 MS. LEIDIGH: I asked Mr. Beringer about this and
10 he had his staff check and so far as he can tell, he can't
11 find the revised version was ever submitted to the board
12 staff.

13 DR. HERZ: The only light I can shed on this is
14 that day before yesterday I authorized payment of a bill
15 for \$97 or so for the shipment of those 38 copies up here
16 to the board, and that was done in early October, I
17 believe, and I think that it's true that we did not
18 distribute any copies other than the 38 copies that we
19 originally distributed to the board. We did not
20 distribute any other copies of anything other than the
21 revised version to people who requested them.

22 We have here with us, in fact, the gentleman who
23 physically transmitted those copies, who can verify they
24 were, in fact, sent to the state board under a cover
25 letter that explained what I just stated, that they were

1 in substitution for the original copy.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: Just one last comment. I don't think
3 we are going to resolve anything here. It is still the
4 staff's viewpoint that they have not received them. Is
5 that what you are saying?

6 MS. LEIDIGH: Yes.

7 MR. BERINGER: Yes, we checked our mail log for
8 that period and there was no entry of incoming documents,
9 and we also checked with participants, other participants
10 if they had received copies, which they had not.

11 DR. HERZ: It was the understanding that 38 copies
12 were sent up here to the board for distribution to
13 whatever your list is. I don't know how you distribute
14 the copies that are sent to the board, but that was where
15 they were to be sent.

16 MS. LEIDIGH: Those are for distribution to a lot
17 of locations. In addition to that, the parties request
18 copies from you or whomever provides the copies, and they
19 pay you for them. If there are changes after that, I
20 would expect you would tell them about the changes after
21 they acquired copies from you.

22 DR. HERZ: As I indicated, it is my understanding
23 we distributed, other than the 38 copies that were
24 distributed to the board on the submission date to meet
25 the requirements. There was no distribution of anything

1 other than the revised copy to people requesting copies
2 from us directly.

3 MR. NAKAGAWA: Mr. Chairman --

4 MR. MAUGHAN: There is not much point in going on
5 very long here.

6 MR. NAKAGAWA: Just so I cover a little
7 clarification about what we are talking about, I have a
8 copy of the bound edition which I sent away for to the
9 Romberg Tiburon Center. Am I correct that this is the
10 revised version?

11 MR. MAUGHAN: That is the revised version, the
12 bound copy. The difficulty that presents itself in the
13 record is that a lot of the other people received the
14 early one and there was not any real indication what the
15 changes were, and you just heard Mr. Thomas say they were
16 numerous and there's a dispute over whether other people
17 received them, including our staff.

18 I don't think we can resolve it right now, so let's
19 go on.

20 DR. HERZ: Number one, it is my recollection that
21 Mr. Nakagawa's request was the first outside request that
22 we serviced and received, and it was serviced with the
23 revised edition.

24 MR. MAUGHAN: But other people may not have known
25 it was even available.

1 DR. HERZ: The only other way that people would
2 have gotten copies of the original report would have been
3 through your distribution here, the 38 copies, because we
4 did not distribute them.

5 MR. SOMACH: As a practical matter, many people
6 obtain copies of exhibits, and that's through going to one
7 of the sites where the documents are lodged to obtain
8 Xerox copies of those exhibits, so if the board hasn't
9 been given a revised copy, then none of the parties who
10 relied upon the board's record would ever get them.

11 DR. HERZ: We are not going to be able to untangle
12 this. From our perspective, we shipped the requisite
13 revised copy to the board. We have the bill from the
14 shipping service.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: Board Member Ruiz has a question, but
16 I really would like to go on.

17 MS. RUIZ: I would like to go on, but I want to
18 understand clearly from the parties if this bound copy has
19 changes in it from the one that was stapled and mailed to
20 the board, and it was received by the board; is that
21 correct?

22 DR. HERZ: That is correct. As we go through the
23 questioning, however, I think it might be useful if there
24 are problems to compare the two texts because the changes,
25 for the most part, were not substitute changes. They

1 were --

2 MR. THOMAS: Mostly typographical changes.

3 MS. RUIZ: You did not prepare an errata sheet or
4 delineate what changes were made from the original which
5 was lodged with the board?

6 MR. THOMAS: That's correct.

7 MS. RUIZ: Thank you.

8 MS. OTSEA: What is this errata sheet?

9 MR. MAUGHAN: That has nothing to do with it.

10 Let's go on. The record shows there is confusion.

11 MR. SOMACH: Q Is the preface to Exhibit 20 a part
12 of Exhibit 20 in terms of what is stated there?

13 DR. HERZ: It was submitted as part of Exhibit 20,
14 yes.

15 Q Okay. Is it a basic assumption in your work and in
16 the report, and I quote from the preface, "In basic
17 environmental conditions, however, estuaries are very
18 similar all over the world." And I believe that that
19 quote can be related to pages 1 through 17 as well as
20 pages 18 through 28 where there is a great deal of
21 discussion and charts and graphs with respect to estuaries
22 all over the world. Is that a basic premise -- as a
23 statement, is that accurate in terms of the premise that
24 much of the report is based upon?

25 DR. HERZ: Yes.

1 Q If the basic assumptions were not true, if all
2 estuaries throughout the world also had some basic
3 differences which would result in different answers to
4 fundamental questions, your report would have an
5 analytical flaw in it; isn't that true?

6 DR. HERZ: No, not at all. One does not expect all
7 estuaries all over the world to be absolutely identical.
8 They have certain similarities and they have certain
9 differences, and the goal of the scientific investigation
10 is to develop logs that hold for as general a set of
11 conditions as possible. So, what we have stressed is the
12 similarities among estuaries and, in fact, it is quite
13 striking that the flow-productivity relationships that we
14 see in San Francisco Bay exist in other estuaries. The
15 numbers, the values of the flows that produce a given
16 value of catch, will not be identical in any two
17 estuaries, but the basic phenomenon of flow and
18 productivity or flow and fish abundance should be similar
19 in all estuaries.

20 Q I am looking for a yes or no answer to this
21 question. Is it your opinion that in spite of the fact
22 that there may be some basic and fundamental differences
23 in estuaries throughout the world, that nonetheless,
24 information obtained from studies in other estuaries
25 throughout the world can be utilized on a one-to-one basis

1 in terms of analyzing these estuaries?

2 DR. HERZ: I can't answer that with a yes or no
3 because I don't understand what you mean one-to-one
4 relationship with this estuary.

5 Q Let me back up and ask you the first question
6 perhaps. How do you define the term estuary?

7 DR. HERZ: Estuary is a variety of definitions.

8 Q I want to know the definition that you and Dr.
9 Rozengurt utilized in this report in the context of the
10 comparison that you are making with other estuaries
11 throughout the world.

12 DR. HERZ: I think we used the definition that says
13 something to the effect that an estuary is a semi-closed
14 body of water which is a meeting place between fresh and
15 saltwater.

16 Q Okay. Differentiate for me, if you would, the
17 difference between the estuary that you just defined and
18 San Francisco Bay?

19 DR. HERZ: There isn't any difference.

20 Q So that they are synonymous terms that one can
21 utilize the term estuary interchangeably with the word San
22 Francisco Bay?

23 DR. HERZ: No, the San Francisco Bay estuary is the
24 river, Delta, bay and adjacent coastal zone. The bay is
25 those hunks of the system that are between the Delta and

1 the Golden Gate.

2 Q So then, your first answer to my question in terms
3 of defining an estuary was an inaccurate definition; is
4 that correct?

5 DR. HERZ: No.

6 Q You didn't define estuary the same way you just
7 defined, or you didn't define the bay in relation to the
8 estuary in the same way you just defined estuary?

9 DR. HERZ: I define an estuary as a meeting place
10 and the system that I described is, in fact, a meeting
11 place of fresh and saltwater, and those are basic
12 components that I think anybody who studies estuaries
13 throughout the world accepts as the definition of an
14 estuary.

15 Q Well, humor me, because I am not anyone around the
16 world who studies estuaries. I understood your original
17 definition of an estuary to be a self-contained embayment,
18 and I asked you whether or not that was synonymous with
19 San Francisco Bay and you essentially said, yes; and then,
20 I went further and asked you an additional question and
21 you now define estuary as not just the embayment, but all
22 the other rivers and systems feeding into the bay.

23 Which is accurate?

24 DR. HERZ: They are both accurate. I think we are
25 engaging in a semantic argument here, and perhaps if you

1 would go on to try to make the point that you are trying
2 to make by differentiating between the two, it might help
3 me, but as far as you have gone now, I don't see the point
4 of the question.

5 Q Your seeing the point of the question isn't
6 particularly relevant. I am merely looking for a
7 definition that you utilized in terms of writing this
8 report and referring to estuaries all over the world. I
9 asked you for a definition of estuaries. I have several
10 on the record now. Can you give me one more time what
11 your definition of an estuary is, the one that when we
12 look back at the record we should refer to is your
13 definitive answer, and if you don't know, you can also
14 obviously say you don't know what an estuary is.

15 DR. HERZ: I think I won't choose the latter. I
16 would like to differentiate between the classical
17 definition of an estuary which is the first definition I
18 gave you, a semi-enclosed body of water which is the
19 meeting place of fresh and saltwater, and if it will
20 clarify things at all, to refer to the second thing that I
21 defined as an estuarine system, which includes the rivers,
22 the Delta, bay and adjacent coastal zones.

23 Q Which definition is the operative definition for
24 the report, Exhibit 20? Is it the classical definition or
25 is it the modified estuarine system definition?

1 DR. HERZ: I am hard pressed to choose because I
2 think we are probably not 100 percent consistent
3 throughout our exhibit and because if you were to look at
4 the authors who study estuaries, you would probably find
5 as many definitions of estuaries as there are estuarine
6 scientists, each one having a slightly different variation
7 in the wording they use to define estuary.

8 Q Well, if that's the case, isn't it true then that
9 reliance upon studies of estuarine systems or estuaries
10 that are based upon a different definition as you have
11 indicated may be the case all over the world with every
12 different scientist, have limitations in terms of relating
13 to this particular, whichever way you define it, estuary
14 or estuarine system. Don't we need a common definition to
15 make common or basic assumptions? Yes or no, and then
16 explain.

17 DR. HERZ: Yes, we need a common understanding and
18 I believe that we have it. I believe that the nuances
19 that I referred to in terms of the definitions that differ
20 among estuarine scientists do not change -- the basic
21 components of an estuary or estuarine system are agreed
22 upon. There is quite a high level of agreement among
23 scientists around the world and I think there would be
24 very little disagreement. There might be, you know, one
25 percent of the estuaries around the world in which some

1 people might prefer to not call it an estuary, but I think
2 in general, there is a high level of agreement of what is
3 considered to be the subject matter when you are talking
4 about estuaries.

5 Q In your preface, and I quote, is a statement that
6 says: San Francisco Bay is a classic example of
7 colonization by foreign species.

8 In a situation of conflict, should flow
9 requirements be managed for natural or foreign species?

10 DR. HERZ: Yes.

11 Q I don't think that particular question, if you were
12 listening, elicited a yes or no response.

13 DR. HERZ: A yes means, from my perspective, both.
14 When you look at the introduced species that we are
15 dealing with, particularly in our report, these are
16 introduced species that have been in the estuary for so
17 long, the two introduced species, shad and striped bass,
18 have been in the estuary for over a hundred years, and
19 according to most people are quite well adapted to this
20 system.

21 Q You have to listen to the question. I said in a
22 situation of conflict between the natural and foreign
23 species, should flow requirements be managed for natural
24 or foreign species?

25 DR. HERZ: I don't know that we have a conflict.

1 Q The question was hypothetically speaking, if there
2 is a conflict, what is your view? If you have none, just
3 say you don't have a view, you haven't thought about it or
4 it's not an important question.

5 DR. HERZ: I have thought a lot about it. I
6 haven't thought about it in a hypothetical conflict
7 situation. I see the State Department of Fish and Game
8 placed in a position by the large number of striped bass
9 fishermen, they are placed in a position of having to
10 manage that species as one of the principal species that
11 derives income for their department and they, therefore,
12 spend a tremendous amount of time and energy managing that
13 species because there are on the order of over 100,000
14 fishermen a year who fish for that species.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: Dr. Herz and Mr. Somach, I appreciate
16 these are very important matters to each side, but I think
17 what is being sought is your opinion on these things, and
18 if you have one, you can say it; and if you don't have
19 one, just say you don't have one, and then we can move on.

20 DR. HERZ: I have no opinion.

21 MR. SOMACH: Q Fine. I quote again from the
22 preface and I quote: The basic reason for this greater
23 impact is that the system of bays and rivers is small, yet
24 we are trying to use its freshwater to produce a
25 mesophytic agricultural environment in a near-desert

1 region.

2 Is it your view that the agricultural economy of
3 the Central Valley does not exist and that, rather, we are
4 trying to do this, trying to establish that type of
5 agricultural economy?

6 DR. HERZ: The principal focus of our research was
7 not to consider the agricultural economy, it was to
8 consider the needs, the resource needs, fishery needs of
9 this system.

10 Q So, do you disavow the statement in the preface I
11 just quoted?

12 DR. HERZ: Do I disavow it? First of all, I didn't
13 make it but it is part of our exhibit, and could you
14 reiterate the question? I have lost the train of the
15 question.

16 Q The question is, focus on the word trying, and the
17 quote assumes somehow that we are trying, and this may be
18 an impossible task, and the question I am asking then to
19 rephrase it or to restate is whether or not you consider
20 the agricultural economy of the Central Valley to be still
21 in the state of trying, or rather, it is in existence
22 today?

23 DR. HERZ: I don't feel prepared to address that
24 question.

25 Q On page 19 of the exhibit is this statement:

1 Today, largely as a result of massive diversion of river
2 water, up to 85 percent of total flow during the critical
3 spring season in some years for irrigation.

4 I believe that may not be an exact quote, but
5 essentially what you are talking about there is a
6 reduction of flows due to diversions of river water and
7 tying those diversions into irrigation. What about
8 diversions from municipal and industrial purposes, doesn't
9 that contribute to the reduction in flows to the
10 Bay-Delta?

11 DR. HERZ: I'm sure it does, but my understanding
12 is that 85 percent of the state's water is used for
13 agriculture.

14 Q I am asking whether or not municipal and industrial
15 diversions contribute to the reduction of inflow-outflow
16 with respect to the bay.

17 DR. HERZ: Yes.

18 Q And what about flood control and the operation of
19 the various upstream facilities that contribute, perhaps
20 not in the reduction, but a shifting in terms of when that
21 water is available to the Bay-Delta; isn't that correct?

22 DR. HERZ: Yes.

23 Q Now, I believe with respect to someone else's
24 testimony you indicated that none of the preparers of this
25 report are fishery biologists, although you attempted to

1 qualify Dr. Rozengurt simply because of his involvement
2 with the other reports similar to this one as being
3 capable to talk in terms of fishery biology matters; is
4 that accurate?

5 DR. HERZ: That's right.

6 Q If we assume for a moment that fishery biology is
7 an expertise that requires extensive training and
8 involvement in the various nuances of it, would it be
9 accurate to state then that the fishery information that
10 is involved within Exhibit 20, rather than being presented
11 from a biological perspective; that is, presented by a
12 biologist based upon studies that a biologist had
13 conducted, is rather a cataloguing of statistical
14 information with respect to catch and other fishery
15 issues?

16 DR. HERZ: I think most of the analyses that are
17 done of the estuarine system reflect a data base that very
18 often is not collected by the people who actually perform
19 the analysis.

20 So, in this case, our first submission, our
21 hydrology report, was not based upon research that we
22 conducted, but rather, Department of Water Resources data.
23 Similarly, this report is based upon our analysis of data
24 collected by other agencies.

25 Q So, that's a yes to the fundamental question that I

1 asked; isn't that correct?

2 DR. HERZ: Restate the question.

3 Q No, I'm not going to restate the question.

4 DR. HERZ: I am not going to give you a yes or
5 no --

6 MR. SOMACH: Can we have the question reread?

7 MR. MAUGHAN: We can, but we have had this trouble
8 before and we shouldn't keep repeating questions and
9 re-answering questions, but go ahead.

10 (The reporter read the question: If we assume for
11 a moment that fishery biology is an expertise that
12 requires extensive training and involvement in the various
13 nuances of it, would it be accurate to state then that the
14 fishery information that is involved within Exhibit 20,
15 rather than being presented from a biological perspective;
16 that is, presented by a biologist based upon studies that
17 a biologist had conducted, is rather a cataloguing of
18 statistical information with respect to catch and other
19 fishery issues?)

20 DR. HERZ: I can't answer that question.

21 MR. SOMACH: Q Let me restate it. Isn't it true
22 that the biological information within Exhibit 20 is
23 merely a cataloguing of statistical and other information
24 collected from other sources rather than data developed by
25 biologists specifically for this report?

1 DR. HERZ: Yes.

2 Q Okay.

3 MR. MAUGHAN: That took five minutes and I really
4 think I understood it to begin with.

5 MR. SOMACH: Q I note on pages 37 through 39 of
6 the report there is a cataloguing of facts and figures.
7 Those are accurate; are they not?

8 DR. HERZ: Which one are you referring to?

9 Q I assume they are if they are in the report. I am
10 talking about all of them and I assume they are all
11 accurate, and I am just trying to get confirmation.

12 DR. HERZ: If they are in the report, I would hope
13 that they are accurate.

14 MR. THOMAS: We may have a problem if you are
15 referring to the unrevised copy.

16 MR. SOMACH: And I am.

17 MR. THOMAS: We don't know what you are talking
18 about.

19 MR. SOMACH: Let me refer you to the revised
20 report, page 36 where it begins: "Water diversion,
21 economics and environment," through page 39.

22 MS. RUIZ: Would it be possible to have another
23 copy of that, please, the revised version? Does anyone
24 have a copy of the revised version I can look at?

25 MS. LEIDIGH: Mr. Thomas, do you have an extra copy

1 of the revised version?

2 MR. SAMANIEGO: We have one up here.

3 MR. THOMAS: Apparently, all of the additional
4 copies that were brought have been distributed.

5 MR. SOMACH: Q Referring to the revised edition,
6 page 38, there is a statement which I will quote for the
7 board's assistance. It states: Because of this water,
8 meaning the water developed and delivered primarily by the
9 State Water Project and the Central Valley Project, and
10 some additional from the Colorado River, California is the
11 largest agricultural manufacturer in the nation.

12 It goes on to say: It produces over 200 commercial
13 varieties of crops and livestock with a value of 10.5
14 billion dollars in 1979.

15 Is that a correct reading of that statement?

16 DR. HERZ: It would appear to be, yes.

17 Q Now, on page 39 there is this statement: The
18 striped bass, shad and Dungeness Crab have experienced
19 almost the same level of decline. Since 1957 up to 1986,
20 losses sustained by the recreational fishery, and
21 actually, this is the portion of the quote I am interested
22 in, since 1957 up to 1986, losses sustained by the
23 recreational fishery account for 1.5 billion dollars.

24 Is that an accurate reading?

25 DR. HERZ: Yes.

1 Q So, if a comparison were made between the 10.5
2 billion dollars related to irrigated agriculture in the
3 valley in one year versus a loss of 1.5 billion dollars
4 over a 29-year period -- let me restate that so you
5 understand me.

6 In order to make a comparison between the
7 productivity or the economic benefits since we are talking
8 about economic figures here that you presented, would it
9 be fair to make a comparison that would include the
10 comparison of the 10.5 billion dollars related to
11 irrigated agriculture in a one-year period as opposed to a
12 loss of only 1.5 billion dollars over a 29-year period?

13 DR. HERZ: No, I don't think it would be fair
14 because it doesn't include the value of other aspects of
15 the fishery in San Francisco Bay and the coastal zone, and
16 this only refers to the losses sustained. So, if you are
17 going to compare value of agriculture, you have got to
18 compare value of agriculture with value of fisheries, and
19 if you look at some of the figures, it is my understanding
20 we have got -- I have seen a 2 billion dollar a year
21 figure placed on California fisheries.

22 Q Where does that information come from? Does that
23 come from Meyer?

24 DR. HERZ: That comes from Pacific Coast Federation
25 of Fishermen's Association. I have heard it used on

1 multiple occasions, so I mean, we were not doing an
2 exhaustive economic study, and I don't think any economics
3 comparison that you make from things in our report are
4 really valid because we are addressing fisheries biology
5 and not economics.

6 Q If I could point you to page 54, there you state
7 that cumulative losses of such magnitude are believed to
8 be one of the major factors responsible for salt intrusion
9 and salinization of the Delta and bay. Is that an
10 accurate quote?

11 DR. HERZ: Yes.

12 Q I don't know that it's on page 44, to think of it.
13 Now, indeed, there is no evidence that the Delta is
14 being salinized; is there?

15 DR. HERZ: I think that there does not currently
16 exist accurate data to evaluate the degree to which there
17 have been changes.

18 Q Is that a yes or no answer? Do you want me to
19 repeat that question

20 DR. HERZ: The basis of that statement was that
21 based on calculations relating flow values to levels of
22 salinity, there is reason to conclude that there have been
23 these changes. However, the data that are necessary to
24 validate that statement do not exist currently.

25 Q Are you familiar with DWR Exhibit 60?

1 DR. HERZ: Why don't you refresh my memory of it.

2 Q The exhibit deals with various issues dealing with
3 salinity, and I believe that -- let's assume for a moment
4 that DWR Exhibit 60 establishes that salinity intrusion
5 in the Delta has been substantially less under post-
6 project conditions than under pre-project conditions.
7 Assuming that that is an accurate statement with respect
8 to what DWR 60 states, would that be the type of evidence
9 that you are referring to that is lacking in terms of
10 making a definitive determination?

11 DR. HERZ: State that again for me, would you, the
12 quote?

13 Q Let's take a hypothetical situation and in this
14 hypothetical situation, DWR Exhibit 60 says or shows that
15 salinity intrusion in the Delta has been substantially
16 less under post-project conditions than under pre-project
17 conditions.

18 Do you understand the hypothetical I am posing to
19 you.

20 DR. HERZ: Yes.

21 Q Assume that is correct, wouldn't that be evidence
22 contrary to what your intuitive feeling is with respect to
23 salinization of the Delta?

24 DR. HERZ: No. What I am saying is that my
25 recollection of Exhibit 60 is that it did not contain

1 information that anything other than surface salinity and
2 that's not how you adequately measure salt intrusion in
3 the estuary.

4 Q Okay. So, at the most then, what you are saying is
5 there simply is no evidence, no data?

6 DR. HERZ: That's right.

7 Q Okay. There has been no evidence that the bay is
8 being salinized -- there is no evidence that the bay is
9 being salinized; is there?

10 DR. HERZ: There are no data.

11 Q The same response, there are no data to show that.
12 Have you taken a look at State Water Contractors'
13 Exhibit No. 266 --

14 MR. SAMANIEGO: Mr. Somach, what you read was on
15 page 54 in starting your salinization question?

16 MR. SOMACH: Yes.

17 MR. SAMANIEGO: Page 54 of the earlier submission?

18 MR. SOMACH: Yes, let me go to it.

19 MS. RUIZ: Is that one of the revisions in the
20 revised draft? Was that revised out?

21 DR. HERZ: I can't answer that without having the
22 two pieces, the two copies in front of me.

23 MS. OTSEA: It's on page 52 at the bottom of the
24 new report.

25 MR. SOMACH: I only have the old one. Yes, it's on

1 the bottom of page 52 of the bound volume.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: It has not been changed.

3 DR. HERZ: No, it looks to be identical.

4 MR. SAMANIEGO: We were trying to follow in the
5 revised and could not find it on page 54.

6 MR. SOMACH: Q So, just to summarize, then the
7 response to those questions, your statement is that that
8 statement that we are referring to is made in the report,
9 but there is no data to support it; isn't that correct?

10 DR. HERZ: Yes.

11 Q Now, starting on page 54 again, and I think this is
12 53, after conclusions, for those of you that are following
13 in the new and revised one. You have listed a number of
14 factors that characterize water development in the
15 Sacramento River basin and the San Joaquin River basin;
16 isn't that correct?

17 Do you want to go ahead and take a look at it?
18 It's on page 53.

19 DR. HERZ: Yes.

20 Q It says: Pre-project period, 1915 through 1943,
21 then a post-project period, 1944 through 1983.

22 DR. HERZ: Yes.

23 Q Have you compared the population of California
24 during the 1915 through 1943 period versus the
25 1944-through-1985 period?

1 DR. HERZ: No.

2 Q So, you have done no comparison of those figures?

3 DR. HERZ: No.

4 Q Isn't it true that California's growing population
5 also establishes and characterizes the water development
6 during each of the two periods in question?

7 DR. HERZ: Yes.

8 Q On page 55 of the old version and in the middle of
9 page 54 on the revised version, you refer to the current
10 and future of the Delta-Bay eco-system. When you make
11 that reference, you are talking about the Bay-Delta
12 eco-system status or health; are you not? Is that what
13 that statement deals with?

14 DR. HERZ: The current annual diversions result in
15 35 to 55 percent reductions -- is that --

16 Q No. The statements starts with "Given," in fact,
17 in the new version we have underlines here, so I guess it
18 is very important, and what I am reading is the last
19 phrase there, that is what I am referring to because I
20 think it modifies the sentence when it says current and
21 future of the Delta eco-system is in question. We are
22 talking about the health, the status of that system; is
23 that correct?

24 DR. HERZ: Yes, that is true.

25 Q In your opinion, is the bay in a state of crisis if

1 one were to exclude issues surrounding the striped bass?

2 DR. HERZ: There is reason to believe that the bay
3 has suffered a fair amount of deterioration as is
4 reflected from the status of some fishery stocks, yes.

5 Q Could you define your understanding of the word
6 "crisis"? Tell me what that word means and I will use
7 your definition of crisis.

8 DR. HERZ: Crisis reflects a critical period, a
9 period that reflects some major change that is likely to
10 have an impact.

11 Q As differentiated from the situation where the
12 impact has occurred, how would you differentiate the two,
13 just so I understand how you are using the word "crisis".

14 DR. HERZ: I would perhaps have said pre-crisis to
15 define what you said, but I want to make sure I understand
16 how you are defining it.

17 Q How would you define that situation once the event
18 has happened? In other words, once the inevitability of
19 the crash, this cataclysmic event that is implied in your
20 definition happens.

21 DR. HERZ: I don't think that I subscribe to the
22 cataclysmic crash school, that there is an event that will
23 be likely emptying of San Francisco Bay or any major
24 single event that will mark going from non-crisis to a
25 crisis situation. It is a process of deterioration to

1 which we were referring. It was not crisis versus
2 non-crisis.

3 Q Okay, using your definition then, in a period of
4 deterioration, let's assume a sliding scale of
5 deterioration, one being the beginning of the
6 deterioration and ten being the bottom end of that
7 deterioration; does the definition of crisis you are using
8 include the entire scale or a portion of the scale?

9 DR. HERZ: I, frankly, don't know.

10 Q Okay, in your opinion, is the bay toward the one
11 end of my scale, that is just beginning to deteriorate, or
12 is it toward the ten where it is just about there, if it
13 is not already at the bottom of what could happen to it?

14 DR. HERZ: I think the statement that I made here
15 reflects the fact that we are currently diverting on an
16 annual basis about 60 percent of the annual flow in some
17 years, and as we have indicated and as you have quoted, as
18 high as 85 percent during some springs. That means we are
19 in a range that in other estuaries has resulted in very
20 serious decline and in some cases total dispersion of some
21 commercially important species from that system.

22 So, we are someplace beyond the mid-point, and I
23 suppose the diversion figure is the easiest way to
24 conceive of it. We are 60 percent of the way across that
25 continuum.

1 Q If I understand the rest of your statement, that
2 conclusion is based upon the assumption that diversions of
3 water as have occurred in this system is basically based
4 upon that observation of amount of diversions from the
5 system?

6 DR. HERZ: It's based on that in relation to a
7 bunch of other estuaries around the world that have been
8 looked at similarly in terms of the proportion of change
9 in diversions over time in the past.

10 Q But nothing based upon this particular estuary
11 other than the flow issue?

12 DR. HERZ: Is what?

13 Q You said that your conclusion, where we were in
14 terms of scale of crisis, was dependent upon two things;
15 diversions, the amount of diversions in comparison with
16 the second thing, what's happened in other estuaries
17 throughout the world.

18 DR. HERZ: There are two parts. It has to do with
19 the amount of diversions, number one; and number two, the
20 responses of the system to those increases in diversion
21 which appear in some of the other lists that you have
22 referred to here, having to do with changes in fisheries
23 production, things which you have pointed out are
24 speculative, like saltwater intrusion, and loss of
25 nutrients and other influences which we ascribe to

1 diversions increasing.

2 Q But the hard data that you are referring to is from
3 other estuaries, that's why the report spends so much time
4 dealing with the other estuaries; isn't that correct?

5 DR. HERZ: Well, the hard data in this report, the
6 purpose of this report, although we spent some time
7 discussing the theoretical underpinning, is to analyze the
8 changes in flow and the resulting fish abundance measures
9 that we talk about in the report itself.

10 Q Okay. I am going to go on to another line of
11 questioning here. On page 63 of the old report which
12 begins Chapter 4, 61 of the new report, you indicate
13 essentially that the 1915-through-1931 period used in your
14 data analysis may be too short for a valid statistical
15 analysis; isn't that correct?

16 DR. HERZ: I don't see that statement.

17 Q Well, let me ask you, in your opinion, is the
18 1915-through 1931 period adequate for a valid statistical
19 analysis?

20 DR. HERZ: I don't think we would have used it if
21 we didn't think it was adequate.

22 Q So, your testimony is that is an adequate period
23 for a valid analysis; is that correct?

24 DR. HERZ: Yes.

25 Q Following page 115, Figure 6-8, can you explain for

1 me what that figure is attempting to show?

2 DR. HERZ: It is showing a number of different
3 things. It shows over the period 1960 to the mid 1980s
4 production of striped bass eggs, the annual index of young
5 striped bass in Suisun Bay and in the Sacramento-San
6 Joaquin Delta in Fish and Game data, and it shows the
7 cumulative total withdrawals of freshwater from the system
8 during that period.

9 Q Is there some conclusion that we are supposed to
10 reach from the figure, and if so, what is that conclusion?

11 DR. HERZ: I think the purpose of presenting these
12 data was to show the reciprocal relationship between these
13 indices of striped bass abundance and the increases,
14 cumulative increase in freshwater diversion out of the
15 system, with the total amount being on the order of 40
16 times the volume of San Francisco Bay by the end of '83, I
17 guess, having been diverted out of the system.

18 Q So, the figure purports to show a cause-and-effect
19 relationship between the diversion and striped bass index?

20 DR. HERZ: It's a very interesting association
21 between these two phenomena.

22 Q Well, isn't it true that you could have plotted
23 almost anything on a cumulative basis between 1960 and
24 1983, and shown the same type of relationship? Can you
25 think of anything that wouldn't have shown the same type

1 of relationship assuming those data were cumulative as
2 this information is?

3 Take the sale of rock-and-roll records, for
4 example, can we make some equation there on the same
5 analysis?

6 DR. HERZ: Well, I think that the cause-and-effect,
7 number one, correlations do not necessarily, as you are
8 trying to point out, show cause-and-effect relationships.
9 They merely show an association between two phenomena, and
10 what is interesting in this figure; number one, is the
11 degree of reciprocity, the fact that the slope of the two
12 lines seem to be mere images of each other, but let me
13 point out once again, as I did in our direct testimony,
14 that no one correlation stands on its own.

15 The fact that we have a variety of sets of
16 correlations with three different species, pre-and-post
17 project with commercial catch, recreational catch and
18 other measures of fish abundance, suggests that these
19 associations are not as fortuitous as the sale of
20 rock-and-roll records, and decline of striped bass
21 productivity in the system.

22 Q So, if I understood all of that, Figure 6-8
23 standing alone really doesn't show that cause-and-effect
24 relationship; isn't that accurate? It can't be used for
25 that purpose standing alone?

1 DR. HERZ: Standing alone, probably not.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: Let me interrupt. How much more do
3 you have, Mr. Somach?

4 MR. SOMACH: I have some more.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: Three minutes or four minutes?

6 MR. SOMACH: More than three, perhaps half an hour.

7 MR. MAUGHAN: I would like to get a good place to
8 stop.

9 MR. SOMACH: This is as good a place to stop as
10 any. It doesn't get any better than this.

11 MR. MAUGHAN: Let's get back by one o'clock.

12 (Noon recess)

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 9, 1987, 1:00 P.M.

2 ---o0o---

3 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, we will go back on the
4 record. Before we start, there is a little note from
5 staff about the copies.

6 MS. LEIDIGH: Yes. For the record, I would like to
7 note that staff has found the revised copies of Exhibit 20
8 which were sent to the board and we do have them.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, that clears up that little
10 bit of confusion. I hope everything else will be cleared
11 up the same way.

12 All right, proceed, Mr. Somach.

13 MR. SOMACH: Q Isn't it true that striped bass
14 spawn in the lower Sacramento River and in the Central and
15 South Delta? Is that an accurate statement?

16 DR. HERZ: Yes.

17 Q Is there any evidence that the striped bass spawn
18 in the Western Delta?

19 DR. HERZ: I can't answer that.

20 Q You don't know?

21 DR. HERZ: No.

22 Q Would anybody that assisted in the preparation of
23 the report know that?

24 DR. HERZ: I'm sure Dr. Rozengurt knows the answer
25 to that question.

1 Q What evidence do you have for the Delta that would
2 indicate that where striped bass do spawn there are any
3 salinity problems?

4 DR. HERZ: You will have to give me a moment or two
5 for me to look up a couple of things in the report.

6 Q Well, let me kind of short-circuit this. If you
7 look at page 121 you deal with the Western Delta and you
8 indicate that there may be a salinity problem there if one
9 were to assume that striped bass spawn there.

10 Do you see that? It's 121 of the old.

11 DR. HERZ: What is the heading?

12 Q The heading is Spring.

13 MR. CUMMINGS: Page 119 in the new report.

14 MR. SOMACH: Yes.

15 Q If you look at "Spring," then I think the statement
16 generally is at the bottom of page 118 and the top of page
17 19.

18 DR. HERZ: Okay. What's the question?

19 Q The first question I asked you was whether or not
20 you had any evidence that striped bass spawn in the
21 Western Delta and you indicated that you simply did not
22 know.

23 DR. HERZ: That's right.

24 Q Okay, then I asked you whether or not you had any
25 evidence that would indicate where striped bass do spawn

1 where there is a problem with respect to salinity.

2 DR. HERZ: Well, there seems to be ample evidence
3 in the literature that salinity is an important factor for
4 successful spawning of striped bass and that there are
5 certain parameters, within a range of parameters, within
6 which salinity must fall if you are going to have
7 successful spawning.

8 Q But that really doesn't respond to the question
9 because the question was looking for specific evidence for
10 the Delta where striped bass do spawn salinity is a
11 problem.

12 DR. HERZ: I can't answer that question either.

13 Q You can't answer the question because you don't
14 know?

15 DR. HERZ: I don't know. In fact, to amplify on
16 that, we really were not addressing salinity. We were
17 only looking at the relationships between flow and
18 production or abundance of fish.

19 Q But the implication is that salinity within the
20 areas that striped bass spawn in the Delta create the
21 problem of spawning. I'm not sure that I articulated that
22 well.

23 But the implication is, in fact, there is a
24 cause-and-effect factor in this Delta in the area where
25 striped bass spawn; is that not true?

1 DR. HERZ: We didn't directly address those data
2 sets, that information, in this study, so I can't really
3 answer that question either way.

4 Q That's fair enough. So, what you are saying is the
5 report does not purport to make such a statement?

6 DR. HERZ: That's correct.

7 Q Okay. And then, anything implied from that would
8 be erroneous, implied from the report to establish that,
9 would be erroneous?

10 DR. HERZ: Yes.

11 Q Your recommendations of 17 million acre-feet and
12 2.5 or 7.5 million acre-feet at the end of your report, I
13 think we discussed -- I think they are on the same pages
14 here as they were.

15 DR. HERZ: The recommendations are on page 146 of
16 the revised report.

17 Q Okay, and we have the charts then which follow
18 those pages, or are they on the pages in the revised book?

19 DR. HERZ: They are adjacent.

20 Q And one of them is labeled "Spring Runoff" and the
21 other is "Annual Runoff"?

22 DR. HERZ: That's right.

23 Q I just want to make sure that I understand what
24 appears to be the significance of that data. Are you
25 familiar with DWR Exhibit 26?

1 DR. HERZ: Perhaps -- I don't remember them by
2 number.

3 Q This time I happen to have a copy. You have never
4 looked at that?

5 DR. HERZ: No.

6 Q Now, earlier on I had understood you to say that
7 the data on unimpaired flows were derived from DWR
8 sources; is that correct?

9 DR. HERZ: That's right, but all of this work was
10 done prior to February, 1987, so it is earlier versions of
11 DWR data, and I don't know the degree to which these data
12 resemble the data that we used in our analysis.

13 Q Why don't you turn to page 37 of that report and
14 take a look at that chart a bit to familiarize yourself
15 with what it purports to show.

16 DR. HERZ: Okay.

17 Q Now, if you look down at the bottom of that --
18 first of all, why don't you describe what the chart is on
19 page 37 of DWR Exhibit 26?

20 DR. HERZ: It states that it is Delta unimpaired
21 total outflow, estimated outflow in thousands of
22 acre-feet, 1921 to 1983. It presented monthly and total.

23 Q Okay, and there's a total for each column; is that
24 right?

25 DR. HERZ: That's correct.

1 Q And there's also an average for each column; is
2 that correct?

3 DR. HERZ: Q Okay. Do the figures on the table
4 look similar to the types of figures that you were
5 utilizing, particularly if one would look at the averages
6 on the bottom, that you utilized when you made your
7 conclusions, which I believe in response to questions were
8 that the average for the April, May and June period, if
9 you were in the middle range of your recommendations, you
10 would need 64 to 70 percent of the unimpaired runoff.

11 Are those the type of figures that you utilized,
12 and what I am talking about now -- are those the types of
13 figures that you utilized, and when I am talking about
14 types of figures, the figures that are averaged at the
15 bottom of page 37, is that where you looked to
16 determine --

17 DR. HERZ: I am, frankly, unclear because if I read
18 this table correctly, it says the average annual total is
19 only 28,000 acre-feet a year and that can't possibly be
20 the total average for the 1921 to 1983 period, and
21 therefore, I think there's got to be something wrong with
22 these numbers. The table says estimated flow in thousands
23 of acre-feet. I am reading the table the way it was given
24 to me.

25 Q Let's assume it says a million then?

1 DR. HERZ: Then, I have got to rethink these
2 numbers.

3 Q Actually, I think it is accurately presented there,
4 but so as not to create any problem or dispute on that
5 point, assuming that you are reading that 28 million --

6 DR. HERZ: It's nice to know that Tiburon Center
7 isn't the only organization that makes mistakes in --

8 Q As I said, I don't think there's an error there.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: It's probably 28,000 thousand.

10 DR. HERZ: Oh, that may be. Okay. Your question
11 is, is this similar to the information that we used to
12 draw our conclusions?

13 MR. SOMACH: Q That is correct.

14 DR. HERZ: And since Dr. Rozengurt is the one that
15 did those calculations, I cannot address that question. I
16 didn't do it.

17 Q Let's assume for a moment that those figures are
18 accurate and let's take again your range of May, June and
19 July, the spring runoff, what is that range on your chart?

20 DR. HERZ: Total spring?

21 Q Right.

22 DR. HERZ: 6.9 to 7.5 million acre-feet.

23 Q Is that for the three months?

24 DR. HERZ: That's cumulative for April, May and
25 June.

1 Q And in terms of how much of the --

2 MR. MAUGHAN: You divide it by three.

3 MR. SOMACH: Q That's the question, is that what
4 you do?

5 DR. HERZ: If you want an average, you get 2.3 to
6 2.5 million acre-feet.

7 Q On the table, what are the totals in terms of
8 April, May and June, averages?

9 DR. HERZ: 4,186,000, 4,239,000 and 2,711,000.

10 Q Okay. So, with respect to July that we are talking
11 about, you gave some figures and I'm not sure where you
12 got it, but if those figures are correct that you have
13 just read for June, you would be talking about virtually
14 the entire flow; is that correct?

15 DR. HERZ: You said July, did you mean June?

16 Q June.

17 DR. HERZ: Yes.

18 Q Dr. Leopold, if I understood your testimony,
19 essentially what you did was review Exhibit 20 and then
20 explain it?

21 DR. LEOPOLD: I don't know what Exhibit 20 is.

22 Q That's this report, the fat one.

23 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, what I did was to study,
24 particularly the table on annual flows.

25 MR. THOMAS: In the interest of having the record

1 accurate, I think it was Tiburon Center Exhibit No. 1 that
2 was provided to you for review, which was not this
3 document, but the document that was submitted for the
4 hydrology portion of the hearing.

5 MR. SOMACH: Q So, you have never taken a look at
6 this exhibit for analysis purposes, this exhibit meaning
7 Exhibit 20?

8 DR. LEOPOLD: No, I think this is a different one
9 than the one I studied.

10 Q Well, that's somewhat of a curious thing, and I am
11 wondering if you can explain why it was necessary to have
12 someone take a look and explain a report that purportedly
13 should explain itself.

14 DR. LEOPOLD: The Tiburon report is hard to read
15 particularly for persons who have not been used to
16 frequency analyses, and therefore, after having read it, I
17 felt it could be better explained by a slightly different
18 set of analyses, and that's the reason I made my own
19 analysis.

20 Q Well, focusing on questions that were asked you
21 earlier with respect to the four-basin index analysis, it
22 appears to me that what you testified was that you
23 rejected somewhat that analysis and moved towards some
24 other data rather than the four-basin index; is that
25 correct?

1 DR. LEOPOLD: I tried, as I said before, I looked
2 at the four-basin index and I compared it in my own
3 analysis against the similar data for 100 percent of the
4 area and came to similar conclusions as to what the
5 Tiburon report stated.

6 Q Do you have any independent evidence on Bay-Delta
7 salinities?

8 DR. LEOPOLD: No, I do not.

9 Q Do you concur -- out of curiosity -- with the
10 assertion that all estuaries can be treated exactly alike?

11 DR. LEOPOLD: Well, I think to make it a little
12 clearer, what is not an estuary is when a river debauches
13 directly into the ocean without going through any kind of
14 bay, and what we mean when we talk about an estuary is
15 defined as a system in which there is a bay of some kind.
16 The Sea of Azov, San Francisco Bay, would be an example
17 with river water coming into the head of that, so that you
18 can talk about the bay eco-system or you can talk about
19 the details of the Delta itself. But, in ordinary
20 parlance, San Francisco Bay would be an estuarine system.

21 Q Well, let me follow up on that and say would it be
22 proper in evaluating the estuarine system then to isolate
23 on a point within the bay, Chipps Island, I think is what
24 we are talking about generally here, as opposed to taking
25 a look at impacts upstream of that point in the Delta and

1 even upstream of that into the rest of that estuarine
2 system? Can you make conclusions about the estuarine
3 system without going further upstream than just "bay"?

4 DR. LEOPOLD: Well, that's the reason all of us are
5 computing total inflow and total outflow because you have
6 to consider this variable zone within which the mixing of
7 the water occurs. None of us stick to only one point in
8 the system to make an analysis.

9 Q But you stick pretty much to one issue, flow.
10 Well, aren't there other variables within the system that
11 can account for declines or other kinds of impacts upon
12 the health of the species which ultimately find their way
13 into the Delta system?

14 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, there's a whole series of other
15 parameters, but for the most part the most pronounced
16 effect on an estuarine system is going to be the water
17 balance, the balance between the incoming freshwater and
18 the saltwater which it is displacing.

19 Q Now, in that analysis is there not an assumption in
20 terms of the data you presented that there has been a
21 reduction in the amount of water available to the
22 Bay-Delta? I mean, isn't that a basic underlying
23 assumption of what you have --

24 DR. LEOPOLD: Well, with the diversions upstream
25 clearly the amount of freshwater outflowing from the Delta

1 has been decreased. Is that what you mean?

2 Q That is right.

3 DR. LEOPOLD: That is right.

4 Q Okay. Are you familiar or is Dr. Herz familiar
5 with State Water Contractors' Exhibit 260A?

6 MR. THOMAS: What is the title of that?

7 MR. SOMACH: I have copies. Let me show them to
8 you.

9 DR. LEOPOLD: No, I have never seen this before.

10 MR. SOMACH: Q Dr. Herz, have you seen this
11 before?

12 DR. HERZ: I have seen it, yes.

13 Q Did you hear the testimony with respect to that
14 particular exhibit? It was actually presented in these
15 hearings on bay inflow.

16 DR. HERZ: No, I didn't hear the testimony.

17 Q Do you understand what that exhibit purports to
18 show?

19 DR. HERZ: I think I do.

20 Q Can you explain what you believe it purports to
21 show?

22 DR. HERZ: Delta outflow is unchanged from the
23 twenties to date.

24 Q Or unchanged perhaps in an upward trend; is that
25 correct?

1 DR. HERZ: I don't know if I would go that last
2 step, but certainly, this purports to show that there is
3 no marked change.

4 Q Now, assuming that were correct and granted that
5 you haven't had a chance to take a look at the exhibit at
6 any length and apparently didn't hear the testimony, but
7 let's assume for the discussion here that it is correct;
8 would that in any way alter the basic assumptions that
9 went into the development of Exhibit 20?

10 Let the record reflect that Mr. Thomas is
11 consulting, perhaps coaching with the witness.

12 DR. HERZ: What the record doesn't reflect is
13 whether the witness accepts the counsel of his counsel.

14 Now that we have had that little exchange, can you
15 restate the question?

16 Q The question generally was assuming that the
17 information that is shown, the data that is shown on State
18 Water Contractors' Exhibit 260A is accurate, assuming that
19 that's accurate; doesn't that seriously undermine some of
20 the basic outflow assumptions that were made within
21 Exhibit No. 20?

22 DR. HERZ: I don't think it speaks to the
23 assumptions underlying the report. The report was an
24 analysis of data, of flow data and fish catch or fish
25 abundance data, and it made no assumptions about how much

1 water there was in the system or there will be. It was
2 simply analyzing, comparing the relationships between flow
3 and fish during the entire period of record.

4 Q Let me go on. That exhibit speaks for itself as
5 does yours in that regard.

6 With respect to some graphs that you have gone
7 through, if you can take a look at your graphs 6-2, 6-3,
8 6-4 and 6-5, that series of graphs --

9 MR. MAUGHAN: I thought you were speeding along by
10 going to Dr. Leopold.

11 MR. SOMACH: Well, actually, we are moving here
12 trying to keep everyone a little off balance by moving
13 back and forth with some dexterity through the exhibits.

14 Q Have you got those at hand?

15 DR. HERZ: Yes.

16 Q Okay. Also, while you are pulling out exhibits,
17 and this may make it much quicker, the recent exhibits you
18 gave us --

19 DR. HERZ: The errata?

20 Q 7-5. Why don't you pull that one out also so you
21 can see it?

22 DR. HERZ: Okay.

23 Q Aren't those graphs driven in great detail in the
24 case of the six-dash numbered graphs by 1918 and with
25 respect to 7-5 and other similar graphs within your report

1 driven by 1918, 1917, 1916?

2 DR. HERZ: If you are asking whether if you remove
3 those three points from the scatter plots, it would affect
4 the correlations, the answer is obviously yes. You can
5 say that about almost any three plotted points in any of
6 the graphs that if you remove those, they are going to
7 change your correlations, so I'm not quite clear on what
8 you mean "driven by."

9 Q Well, if you were going to take a look at a line, I
10 think I have done that somewhere in here, we have drawn a
11 line through a similar chart; in fact, you presented those
12 on the board.

13 DR. HERZ: Right.

14 Q Can we find one of those for an example? Let's see
15 if I can find one quickly.

16 DR. HERZ: 7-1.

17 Q 7-1. There we go, shad. What does the line that's
18 drawn through those data points purport to represent?

19 DR. HERZ: It purports to represent a best-fit line
20 describing the correlation.

21 Q Right, and the correlation is an upward trend flow
22 to pounds; right? Isn't that what that's showing?

23 DR. HERZ: Upward trend to pounds?

24 Q The more flow the more pounds?

25 DR. HERZ: Oh, yes.

1 Q That's right; isn't it?

2 DR. HERZ: Positive relationship between these two
3 factors, yes.

4 Q And if you were to exclude 1916 and 1917 on graphs
5 7-1, you get pretty much of a flat line; don't you,
6 assuming that's what you were going to do?

7 DR. HERZ: One could argue as easily that the lower
8 part of the curve, since it is a curve that's got two
9 slopes representing it, would remain relatively the same
10 if you remove those two points, and it certainly is not a
11 flat line indicative of no correlation.

12 Q Might there be other explanations for high poundage
13 in 1916, 1917 and 1918?

14 DR. HERZ: Perhaps.

15 Q Have you explored other factors other than just
16 simply this flow to poundage relationship?

17 DR. HERZ: Not specifically those years, no.

18 Q Have you taken a look at fishing effort, for
19 example?

20 DR. HERZ: As far as we know from the information
21 that we have available, the effort does not seem to be
22 markedly changed during those couple of years relative to
23 the years on the other side.

24 Q From an historical perspective, was there anything
25 significant in the country during that time?

1 DR. HERZ: There were a few men off fighting a war.

2 Q And returning and so forth during that period of
3 time, 1918 at least, which drives the other chart --

4 MR. MAUGHAN: Well, yes, I think you are trying to
5 testify now, Mr. Somach.

6 MR. SOMACH: I am just suggesting. Did you take a
7 look at any of those historical issues on whether or not
8 they may have an impact or might not have an impact upon
9 those data points? That's a simple question.

10 DR. HERZ: What we used were existing data on the
11 commercial fishing effort that came primarily from reports
12 of Fish and Game. There was only an indication. If you
13 look, as I recall, at the salmon figure that we presented
14 there, there is some speculation that the shape of that
15 curve was affected by World War II.

16 Q So, there was at least in some of the analyses that
17 correlation perhaps. I actually have looked at those
18 charts for the later period and note in those years after
19 the second World War you also have higher figures.

20 DR. HERZ: You have to bear in mind that the issue
21 is not simply the level of effort, it is the catch per
22 level of effort and if we had that information available,
23 it would be a relatively simple matter of trying to
24 correct for catch per unit of effort. With only the
25 effort, with no information about how much the effort was

1 decreased during World War I and increased immediately
2 after, we cannot do very much to correct that point, and I
3 think it is moot. We can't attribute that point to effort
4 any more than it just also happens to be if you look at --
5 what year are we looking at, '16 and '17 -- '18 is
6 especially high, but it is also an especially high flow
7 year.

8 Q So, there are a number of factors. All I am asking
9 is if there are other factors besides flow that may have
10 contributed to the high poundage in those particular
11 years. That really is all I was asking.

12 DR. HERZ: My answer was we didn't look at that
13 information, we only looked at the flow and catch.

14 Q In your analysis, generally in Exhibit 20, you have
15 used a number of different data sets, I believe 1916
16 through 1931, 1916 through 1936, and others; isn't that
17 correct?

18 DR. HERZ: Yes.

19 Q That really isn't normally accepted practice in a
20 statistical analysis; is it?

21 DR. HERZ: To use different data sets?

22 Q That is right. Isn't it acceptable practice for
23 you to pick a data base and construct a model that best
24 explains the data base as opposed to looking around and
25 formulating your conclusions based upon data that you have

1 picked up? I mean, is that inaccurate? You can say yes
2 or no.

3 DR. HERZ: Not necessarily --

4 Q Rather than answering the question, since you
5 haven't responded yet, let me ask you, isn't it accepted
6 practice to pick your data base, then construct your model
7 that best explains the data?

8 DR. HERZ: Well, you must remember that in several
9 places in the report and several places in our testimony
10 we indicate that we are doing either exploratory
11 correlations which are undertaken to determine whether
12 there are basic underlying relationships that seem worthy
13 of further study and that's where we are at this point.

14 In terms of hypothesizing in great detail, having
15 detailed hypotheses that guided every analysis, we were
16 not doing that because that was an exploratory
17 investigation.

18 Q So, you are saying it's not accepted practice to
19 pick your data base and construct a model that best
20 explains the data?

21 DR. HERZ: That's not at all what I said.

22 Q I know it's not what you said, but what you said
23 didn't answer my question. I understand you did a lot of
24 things in your report, and I am merely looking at accepted
25 analytical practice. If you are not trying to explore a

1 whole bunch --

2 MR. MAUGHAN: One more chance to answer, but I do
3 think --

4 MR. SOMACH: Couldn't I get just a yes or no?

5 MR. MAUGHAN: Well, you can get yes, no, I don't
6 know or I am not going to talk.

7 DR. HERZ: We believe that this technique of
8 exploratory investigations is perfectly appropriate for
9 the data sets that we use.

10 MR. SOMACH: Q Okay, let the record reflect that
11 you didn't respond to the question in terms of yes or no.

12 MR. THOMAS: I believe he did respond. His
13 response was that an exploratory method is acceptable.

14 MR. SOMACH: It's on the record and we will proceed
15 from there.

16 MR. MAUGHAN: Yes, please.

17 MR. SOMACH: Q So, in the report itself you talk
18 about peer review of the report. What is your definition
19 of peer review.

20 DR. HERZ: Peer review is considered to be the
21 distribution of a document to people with expertise in
22 that field or who have published in that field to solicit
23 their feedback on the document.

24 Q So, it is not more formal than that?

25 DR. HERZ: That's right.

1 Q Okay. So, it is just kind of sending it around to
2 a bunch of people you know and asking for their comments,
3 or that you know of?

4 DR. HERZ: It can be that collegial, it can also be
5 sent to people who you know might be very critical of the
6 work because you want an honest assessment of your work.
7 You want to know whether it will stand up to severe
8 cross-examination by the State Water Contractors.

9 Q Dr. Herz, you participated in the preparation of
10 this exhibit?

11 DR. HERZ: I did.

12 Q What is your Ph.D. in?

13 DR. HERZ: Behavioral biology.

14 Q And how does that relate to this report?

15 DR. HERZ: Well, some of my published research has
16 to do with the behavior of fish and the effects of toxic
17 substances on fish. I actually do not claim to be a
18 fishery research expert. My expertise was as it was
19 claimed by Mr. Thomas at the outset, that my expertise
20 over the past 15 years working on San Francisco Bay has
21 been primarily to do with marine policy and the use of
22 scientific and technical information in marine and
23 estuarine public policy decision making, and I think this
24 is a good example of where that scientific information is
25 very relevant to these kinds of decision.

1 Q Mr. Thomas's flowery introduction aside, in terms
2 of your academic expertise, what in that -- and I have
3 looked through the regime in some great detail and I am
4 trying to figure out exactly is it the experience over the
5 last 15 years as opposed to any academic Ph.D. experience
6 that you bring to the report?

7 DR. HERZ: I think the only things that I can claim
8 in my academic background that are relevant are a variety
9 of courses in speciology, biochemistry, neurophysiology of
10 fish and fish behavior, and a number of publications,
11 probably a dozen, somewhere between a dozen and 20
12 publications having to do with fish behavior, are the only
13 academic claims I have in this area.

14 MR. MAUGHAN: I hope we are getting close to
15 winding up on this phase.

16 MR. SOMACH: I just have a few questions related to
17 some interesting issues that came up in direct.

18 Q You indicated that your recommendations, the
19 recommendations we discussed earlier, which you cite at 64
20 to 70 percent and 63 to 70 percent, depending whether you
21 are looking at three months, April, May and June, or
22 annual, were consistent with the U. S. Fish and Wildlife
23 Service's recommendation regarding flows; is that correct?

24 DR. HERZ: I said that the cubic feet per second
25 flow rate during the spring were similar to my

1 understanding of the Fish and Wildlife Service's
2 recommendations. I didn't say anything about the
3 proportion of flow.

4 Q Well, maybe I didn't understand that any better
5 than I understood your answer. What was the purpose for
6 citing the U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service recommendations
7 in conjunction with your recommendations?

8 DR. HERZ: Only that it was my understanding that
9 the numbers were quite similar.

10 Q Did you do any balancing, did you do any impact
11 analysis with respect to the impacts of committing those
12 amounts of flows to Bay-Delta uses in terms of the impacts
13 upon consumptive users of water?

14 DR. HERZ: Our purpose was simply to look at the
15 needs of the resource and that's the only thing that our
16 recommendations are directed at.

17 Q Okay. With respect to recommendations made by you
18 in terms of EPA, the National Academy of Sciences, I tried
19 to take accurate notes during that period of time, and it
20 appears to me that the assumption for making those
21 recommendations is either that the State Water Resources
22 Control Board is not qualified or it is not an independent
23 agency.

24 Which of those two is accurate, or are they both
25 accurate?

1 DR. HERZ: Have I stopped beating my wife? The
2 issue that I was --

3 MR. WALSH: Did I get here just in time?

4 MR. MAUGHAN: The last question for Mr. Somach.

5 DR. HERZ: The issue being addressed was that it
6 was the feeling that the voluminous information resulting
7 from this set of hearings, particularly the hydrology,
8 oceanography material would benefit by having outside
9 review by a totally independent entity, which perhaps was
10 more familiar with the world-wide experience of the
11 effects of freshwater diversions on estuaries.

12 Q So then, you are talking about qualifications and
13 independence, that's what I gleaned --

14 DR. HERZ: Talking about expertise, qualifications
15 or expertise.

16 Q And independence?

17 DR. HERZ: Independence as well.

18 MR. SOMACH: Okay, I don't have any more questions.

19 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. That takes care of that.

20 Do we have anyone else that would like to cross-
21 examine? Mr. Schulz. Anyone besides Mr. Schulz?

22 All right, sir. I know you are brief.

23 Is staff going to have questions?

24 MS. LEIDIGH: Yes.

25 CROSS-EXAMINATION

1 by MR. SCHULZ:

2 Q Dr. Herz, I was interested in your earlier
3 discussion of the estuary and estuarine system, and as I
4 understood what you were saying, the estuarine system was
5 basically made up of, shall we say, three components; the
6 Delta component, San Francisco Bay component and the
7 off-shore component?

8 Would that be an accurate summary of what you said?

9 DR. HERZ: I think I said four. I said river,
10 Delta, bay, coastal zone.

11 Q Okay. So, you would go above the Delta into the
12 river system also in your description of the estuary?

13 DR. HERZ: Yes.

14 Q How far up the river would you go?

15 DR. HERZ: That's a difficult absolute question to
16 answer. I would go up the river sufficiently far until I
17 was satisfied that there was little or no influence left
18 from the saltwater inflow and tidal input.

19 Q Okay. Now, I would like to try to have you answer
20 questions breaking down the estuary into those pieces, and
21 let me ask you to make the following breakdown, the river,
22 the Delta to Chipps Island, San Francisco Bay and the
23 off-shore coastal area, and I would also ask you in
24 response to the questions to break down your answers from
25 the bay down to, if you can, Suisun Bay, San Pablo Bay,

1 Central Bay, which would be defined as from San Pablo Bay
2 to the Bay Bridge, and South Bay. Is that an acceptable
3 breakdown of the components for you?

4 DR. HERZ: Okay.

5 Q Now, you indicated that you dealt with three which
6 you felt were better indicator species, salmon, striped
7 bass and shad; is that accurate?

8 DR. HERZ: Yes.

9 Q With respect to salmon, did your analysis indicate
10 which of those regions are causing any of the problems
11 that you perceived in the salmon population and catch, and
12 which of those regions did not seem to be related? In
13 other words, are you aware of any problem in off-shore
14 coastal areas that are affecting the salmon catch or
15 anything else?

16 DR. HERZ: I think the best answer to that question
17 is what we were addressing was the relationship of
18 freshwater inflow or Delta outflow on the species, and we
19 did not attribute the changes in the relationship to any
20 one particular location over any other?

21 Q I am not trying to be devious here at all. I am
22 trying to recognize that in these proceedings the board
23 will be setting standards, be they salinity standards or
24 outflow standards, and in order to determine whether there
25 is a need for a particular outflow standard to protect the

1 particular beneficial use, it seems to me they need to
2 know where the problem is occurring. In other words,
3 there has been testimony with respect to salmon that maybe
4 the problem is in the area of Rio Vista and not below, and
5 I am just asking you whether, in your analysis, you made
6 any distinction between the estuary, the bay, the Delta in
7 terms of your conclusions and recommendations?

8 DR. HERZ: We did not.

9 Q Are you aware yourself of any problems that are
10 being created to salmon populations in the area of the
11 estuary below Carquinez Strait?

12 DR. HERZ: That's not what we were addressing, and
13 anything I would say would be purely speculative at this
14 point.

15 Q You, as having studied and worked in the bay for a
16 number of years, don't have any independent opinion in
17 that regard?

18 DR. HERZ: I am here to testify about the report
19 that we did and that report didn't address the area of
20 your question, and I don't feel that I can answer that
21 question.

22 MR. MAUGHAN: Mr. Schulz, it looks like the record
23 is clear on that point.

24 MR. SCHULZ: Yes. Previously when experts have
25 appeared and they have information outside of their

1 specific report, it has been allowed to ask them whether
2 in their expert opinion they have any information in those
3 areas.

4 MR. MAUGHAN: You did ask that and I thought you
5 got your answer.

6 MR. SCHULZ: Q I would like to go to a couple of
7 your tables. The first one is 6-7. I don't know what
8 page it is at.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: Page 11; isn't it?

10 MR. SCHULZ: Yes, it is. It depends whether you
11 are in the revised or not. I am in the original.

12 Q 6-7 is opposite page 116.

13 DR. HERZ: Figure or table?

14 Q Figure. Line No. 3 is the Delta outflow line; is
15 it not?

16 DR. HERZ: The deviation of regulated outflow, yes.

17 Q Can you tell me why that line stops in 1982 while
18 the rest of the data goes out to 1986 or '87?

19 DR. HERZ: Those are five-year --

20 Q Aren't they back averaged?

21 DR. HERZ: Well, no, as best I am able to tell, the
22 inflow data we have that we were working with only went to
23 '82.

24 Q But they are back averaged; aren't they, they are
25 that year and the prior four?

1 DR. HERZ: Yes.

2 Q Are you familiar enough with the flows in the
3 period after 1982 to give us an estimate of where you feel
4 that line would go if you extended it out 1986 or 1987,
5 whether it would go up or flat or continue down?

6 DR. HERZ: Well, again, recall these are averages.
7 You are not going to see an absolute response to the
8 higher flows that occurred, and that, in fact, was not the
9 reason why we did not use it because in some of our
10 individual year plots --

11 MR. MAUGHAN: But it is a five-year average; up,
12 down or flat?

13 DR. HERZ: It probably would go up a slight amount,
14 but I don't know what amount.

15 MR. SCHULZ: Q So, if you extend that line out,
16 you would have shown probably a slight increasing, using
17 your words, in the outflow average by the continuing
18 decline in the other figures; is that correct?

19 DR. HERZ: No, the other two lines would remain the
20 same.

21 Q Would have remained the same, okay.

22 I would like to draw your attention to two of your
23 figures, 5-4 and 5-18. 5-4 is one of the tables that
24 follows page 83 and 5-18 is just before page 92. Now, as
25 I take a look at those two tables, they both appear to be

1 salmon catch in the bay and Delta, and the only difference
2 is the one is 1916 to 1936, that's 5-4, and the other one
3 is 1944 to 1958.

4 Is that correct, that they are both measuring the
5 same catch, the same catch data, or essentially the same
6 catch data?

7 DR. HERZ: Yes.

8 Q Okay. Now, on 5-4, you used a four-year running
9 mean, lag one year, and on 5-18, you used a three-year
10 running mean, lag two years.

11 Now, I want to ask you, was there something that
12 happened after 1936 that makes that a biologically
13 significant change? Why, if you were looking at the catch
14 in just two successive periods did you change your
15 correlation equation? Is there any biological
16 significance?

17 DR. HERZ: I think the only answer that I can give
18 you is that the critical period being represented by the
19 year of catch in the preceding period is that they are all
20 in the three-to-five-year window, where we consistently
21 demonstrate the best relations, and whether it is three
22 and two or four and one may not have a biological basis --
23 what I need to have in front of me and I don't have, and
24 it would take me too long to find it, is the figures that
25 look at three and two for the pre-project period and four

1 and one for the post-project, to see how different those
2 relationships are.

3 They may still be significant correlations. What
4 we obviously did is present some of the strongest
5 correlations in figure form.

6 Q My understanding of your three-to-five-year concept
7 is that it is your conclusion that the Delta and the bay
8 eco-system is an accumulative system and that, therefore,
9 conditions that may have existed one or two years before a
10 particular smolt comes downstream might affect its
11 survival to adulthood; is that correct?

12 DR. HERZ: That is correct.

13 Q Okay. For salmon, can you tell me what biological
14 conditions, more favorable biological conditions are
15 created by that cumulative effect that you believe would
16 be responsible for that?

17 DR. HERZ: I can hypothesize about some of them. I
18 don't have the data that necessarily gives me total
19 confidence to make the statement that this is a
20 theoretical explanation for the relationships that we
21 have, but all of the factors that we have listed in the
22 report having to do with freshwater serving as a barrier
23 to saltwater intrusion, the delivery of nutrients,
24 influences on flushing capacity, all can have accumulative
25 effects that might well influence the conditions under

1 which the estuary is at -- the preceding several-years
2 conditions relative to salinity, relative to nutrients,
3 relative to pollutants, can determine the current state
4 into which the organism comes to spawn.

5 Q Would it be a fair statement that the basis of your
6 conclusion in that regard is founded primarily on the
7 existence of the correlations that you found rather than
8 on any biological investigations?

9 DR. HERZ: No, because, as I said at the outset,
10 one of the basic premises that we began with in this work
11 was that the system is this averaging system that does, in
12 fact, respond on a cumulative basis and that there was,
13 therefore, reason to believe that these lag flows would,
14 in fact, be the most effective way to show some strong
15 relationships.

16 Q I don't disagree with the lag flows. I think we
17 have used them in previous testimony. I am dealing with
18 the cumulative effects, the averaging.

19 DR. HERZ: Both the cumulative and the lagging are
20 part of our basic premise that led us to do this work and,
21 by the way, I wanted to add, in your asking about Figures
22 5-4 and 5-11, one of the reasons for the differences may
23 be that the 5-4 is annual flows and 5-18 is spring flows
24 being shown. That could very well account for the
25 difference --

1 Q For the choice of different averaging and lag time?

2 DR. HERZ: Yes.

3 Q On page 39 of your report, you have the following
4 statement: The striped bass, shad and Dungeness Crab have
5 experienced almost the same level of decline.

6 Are we to draw the inference that it is your
7 opinion or the opinion of this report that the decline in
8 Dungeness Crab is related to the decreases in Delta
9 outflow that you have set forth in your report?

10 DR. HERZ: That certainly has been put forth by
11 some people as one of the explanations, but I don't know
12 that we would definitively want to be tied to that as the
13 only explanation. Fish and Game went through a very
14 elaborate five-year study a number of years ago and they
15 were not prepared to conclude that flow was the principal
16 reason for the crab decline, but they didn't rule it out
17 as having any influence, as I recall.

18 Q One page back you have the statement at the bottom
19 of page 38, I assume it is still there, at least it's
20 close to there. The paragraph starts out: Currently, the
21 two projects store more than 20 million acre-feet, around
22 80 percent of the unimpaired mean inflow, et cetera.

23 Do you find that statement?

24 DR. HERZ: I do.

25 Q Can you tell me whether the words "the projects

1 store" relates to what they, in fact, store on an annual
2 basis or is it the storage capacity of the reservoirs?

3 DR. HERZ: I'm afraid that's another one of those
4 questions I can't answer. I don't know.

5 Q Finally, my last couple of questions deal with
6 Figure 8-1 which follows page 145. Can you tell me why
7 you utilized for the post-project period 1975 to 1978 a
8 four-year period which includes the two driest years of
9 record, including the historic driest year?

10 DR. HERZ: I don't believe, according to Figure 8-1
11 that I am looking at, that we use that period at all. We
12 used the period 1955 to 1978.

13 Q I'm sorry. I did misread that. I thought that was
14 a 7, not a 5, on my copy. Okay. That takes care of the
15 problem.

16 The checkered part or the hatched part, the spring
17 outflow needed for successful catches, is that all fish?
18 I mean, is that striped bass, salmon and shad?

19 DR. HERZ: Yes, that's what that was to designate.

20 Q And it was your opinion that they all responded in
21 the same fashion?

22 DR. HERZ: It was our opinion based on the
23 conclusions and findings of our report, yes.

24 Q And is it then your opinion that there have not
25 been successful catches of salmon in the period 1955 to

1 1978?

2 DR. HERZ: That's a valid question. I think what
3 we were implying rather than catches, we probably should
4 have used production or abundance, because our only
5 post-project salmon information or post-'57 commercial
6 catch data was from the fish returning to Red Bluff Dam,
7 and also, that hatched stand shows what level of flow was
8 necessary to produce the level of commercial fish that was
9 produced in the pre-project period, the 1925 to 1940
10 period, and meant to imply that perhaps if we went to the
11 upper level of range, that we might well be able to
12 produce conditions that would be adequate for once again
13 having commercial fishing in San Francisco Bay.

14 Q Commercial fishing in San Francisco Bay?

15 DR. HERZ: For salmon.

16 MR. SCHULZ: Okay, that concludes my cross.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. Staff.

18 MS. LEIDIGH: Yes, a few.

19 EX A M I N A T I O N

20 by MR. CUMMINGS:

21 Q Dr. Leopold, you mentioned that based on Arizona
22 studies where there were on the ground pinon juniper
23 clearings to test for measurements in increased runoff,
24 you said it would take a century to show a change had
25 actually occurred. Is that because there's too much noise

1 in the data, or is that because --

2 DR. LEOPOLD: The variance is too large.

3 Q Is Arizona precipitation as variable as that in
4 California?

5 DR. LEOPOLD: Probably more so. You are speaking
6 about seasonally or geographically?

7 Q Seasonally.

8 DR. LEOPOLD: I think so, yes.

9 Q Dr. Herz, I am confused. I was reviewing page 103
10 of your document which addressed salinity effects on
11 striped bass, and I was under the impression from your
12 response to an examination by Mr. Somach that you were
13 stating that the report doesn't address whether or not
14 stripers have a problem of salinity in spawning areas.

15 Can you tell me which is the case?

16 DR. HERZ: What I meant to say or thought I said
17 was that we did not directly address the salinity issue in
18 our report, but that it was my understanding from the
19 literature that there are very definite salinity ranges
20 that must exist for spawning and for hatching of eggs.

21 Q I think my other questions would probably be best
22 directed at Dr. Rozengurt regarding the rivers flowing
23 into the Sea of Azov. Would you be able to answer, and if
24 you can, will you?

25 Are there rivers used by the fish that run into the

1 Sea of Azov affected at all by either agricultural or
2 saline drainage?

3 MR. WALSH: Don't answer in Russian.

4 DR. HERZ: I would if I could, but I won't because
5 I don't know the answer.

6 Q Okay.

7 E X A M I N A T I O N

8 by MR. SUTTON:

9 Q I would like to try to get a clarification of your
10 discussion of cumulative effects in the estuary versus
11 flows. A lot of the data that you are looking at is
12 commercial and recreational catch data; is that correct,
13 as opposed to abundance?

14 DR. HERZ: Yes. Some of it is catch, some of it is
15 abundance.

16 Q Any particular years catch will reflect one or more
17 previous years of good or bad conditions relative to
18 recruitments to the adult stock; is that correct?

19 DR. HERZ: Yes.

20 Q So, in a series of years, can you have one very
21 good year which will have effects over several successive
22 years in terms of catch?

23 DR. HERZ: I suppose that's possible.

24 Q So that when looking at cumulative effects, is it
25 your testimony that in the past when you have had several

1 good years you have produced large catches or that several
2 good previous years has a beneficial effect on one
3 particular year class, and I am excluding previous
4 recruitment here.

5 DR. HERZ: That's an excellent question, and I
6 don't know that our data and the way we have broken it
7 down and analyzed it makes it possible to discriminate
8 between those two possibilities.

9 MR. WALSH: Mr. Sutton, I want to make sure I
10 understood. Let me try to phrase it. Are you saying that
11 a very good spawning year, return spawn year can mask the
12 effects of maybe the subsequent two or three bad years?

13 MR. SUTTON: Yes. It hasn't been seen as much
14 here, but particularly on the East Coast they do have
15 striped bass in Chesapeake Bay which are called super
16 classes which are so significantly larger that the catch
17 for six, eight, as many as ten years afterwards, reflects
18 that one super class and not necessarily reflects the
19 impacts good or bad in subsequent years, or previous
20 years.

21 MR. WALSH: Correct. Is that what you are saying?

22 MR. SUTTON: Yes.

23 MR. WALSH: Okay, thank you.

24 MR. SUTTON: Q You have no further response to
25 that?

1 DR. HERZ: No.

2 Q On page 146 of your revised Exhibit 20, you are
3 discussing the recommendations of flows and you state
4 those flows "must be maintained for periods of at least
5 two to three consecutive years."

6 My question is, two to three consecutive years out
7 of how many?

8 DR. HERZ: I think the statement says what's
9 necessary, which is two to three consecutive years. It
10 doesn't make any difference out of how many. Consecutive
11 means consecutive.

12 Q In other words, are you saying, in essence, if it
13 is not out of a longer period that you have to essentially
14 have those same flows every year?

15 DR. HERZ: For several consecutive years, which
16 implies that you could have years where you didn't have
17 that flow, but in order to have the kind of levels of fish
18 that we are talking about, you can't just have one good
19 year and expect that you are going to restore a declining
20 fishery or produce a good year class that you catch three
21 or four years later or two or three years later.

22 MR. THOMAS: May I have just a moment on that
23 point?

24 DR. HERZ: I am advised that Dr. Rozengurt says
25 that he now prefers two out of three consecutive years, so

1 that does leave a little more breathing room.

2 MR. SUTTON: Q So, you are recommending in
3 particular for spring flows that two out of every three
4 years, you would recommend to have the flows of 6.9 to 7.5
5 million acre-feet during April, May and June?

6 DR. HERZ: Yes.

7 Q In that regard, are you also proposing that these
8 flows be approximately equal in all three months?

9 DR. HERZ: No. They can be distributed in any way
10 such that the average -- I mean, that the total for the
11 period is in that range.

12 Q Even if, for example, hypothetically you could
13 have, shall we say, 3.5 million acre-feet in April and
14 May, and zero in June? Do you have a minimum?

15 DR. HERZ: No, that -- 3.5, did you say? That
16 wouldn't work. You need to get a total for the three
17 months of 6.9 to 7.5.

18 Q 3.5 in April and 3.5 in May and June, would still
19 equal 7.0.

20 DR. HERZ: Yes, that is what this is saying.

21 Q So you do not have a minimum flow recommendation
22 for any of the months; is that correct?

23 DR. HERZ: Not that we have included in this
24 report.

25 Q I also want to confirm, I believe you testified

1 earlier that you do not have an opinion on recommendations
2 for varying these standards in different year types such
3 as presently exists in D-1485?

4 DR. HERZ: No. It isn't that refined.

5 MR. SUTTON: Thank you. That's all I have.

6 MR. MAUGHAN: Anything else?

7 MS. LEIDIGH: No.

8 MR. MAUGHAN: Board members? I have a single
9 question for Dr. Leopold. There has been a great deal of
10 reliance in terms of the expert testimony we have received
11 over many weeks now and actually over many years in terms
12 of trying to develop correlations between certain events
13 and certain cycles of runoff, and what have you, and I
14 have seen in the past some of them work but I also note
15 that some very key decisions are made on that basis, and
16 then, I like to see what happens after those decisions are
17 made.

18 I have asked questions of several people why the
19 striped bass index, which was related to a correlation and
20 after it was decided and imposed, things haven't worked
21 out the way that it appeared that they would.

22 Dr. Leopold, if you recall, too, in the Colorado
23 River, there was a lot of testimony about persistence of
24 wet periods and dry periods, and California -- and I was
25 associated with this, felt that there wasn't any water

1 left over for new projects in Arizona, namely, because it
2 looked like there was a persistent dry period and you
3 couldn't count on it.

4 There again, California didn't prevail and the
5 project has been built. The reservoirs have been full,
6 brimming and spilling the last several years, which does
7 indicate that even though you develop these frequency
8 analyses and so on, either you have got a chance of
9 occasionally getting some wet years or there's not too
10 high a degree of reliance on some of these forecasts, and
11 in that case, as I say, is where a lot of testimony went
12 and it hasn't turned out to be the way it looked like it
13 might turn out to be.

14 Do you have any comments generally about
15 correlations and frequency analysis that you would like to
16 leave with us?

17 DR. LEOPOLD: No, but I think you brought up a
18 point that has to be kept in mind. The climate,
19 especially in North America, started to change between
20 1945 and 1951. The trend has been generally toward a
21 wetter, cooler period starting in the fifties and that has
22 been accompanied by a greater variability, year-to-year
23 variability and season-to-season variability.

24 The increasing carbon dioxide which is now well
25 established, especially from the long record at Monaloe --

1 these are the people who have been studying this problem
2 to the conclusion that the increase in the warming
3 resulting from the growth of carbon dioxide values in the
4 atmosphere will reverse the present trend were it to
5 continue about the year 2010 or something like that, and
6 so that even if the general tendency for a wetter period
7 starting in the fifties continues, which we don't know
8 whether it will or not, it will certainly be overcome and
9 reversed in the early part of the next century due to the
10 greenhouse effect.

11 You are absolutely correct in saying that
12 correlations are useful indicators, but what we usually
13 miss is the causal connection between two things which are
14 being correlated. It has been brought out during the day
15 to day that there appears to be a relationship between two
16 variables, but we don't know enough about the mechanism to
17 say that this is a cause-and-effect relationship.

18 One of the things that is highly necessary, it
19 seems to me, for the long-term management of any water
20 resource, is to pick out the major questions that have to
21 be answered, see to it that data are being collected that
22 are specific to answering such questions, and that the
23 mechanism of the relationship be developed through
24 research.

25 These are long-term propositions but I think that

1 all three types of things ought to be considered by the
2 board in setting standards -- first, what kind of research
3 is going to be needed, how are we going to get it done in
4 an independent fashion, what kind of data are going to be
5 needed.

6 I doubt very much whether in the long run we can
7 continue in a practical manner to carry on continuously
8 the kind of data-collection effort that we now have in the
9 San Francisco Bay region. There are too many stations,
10 for example, that are measuring, as we said before,
11 salinity, and maybe we are measuring the wrong aspect of
12 salinity so that somehow or another the longevity and the
13 utility, the usefulness of the data collection which is
14 being proposed or dictated, required by the board, that
15 has to be given a great deal of thought because, as you
16 say, you cannot rely entirely just on the matter of
17 correlation because they will not necessarily hold up in
18 the next cycle.

19 MR. MAUGHAN: So, when we get all these
20 correlations, we ought to be very careful as we examine
21 them to look at all the points you have just enumerated,
22 not just take them on the surface.

23 DR. LEOPOLD: Yes, I think that is correct.

24 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, thank you.

25 Mr. Thomas.

1 MR. THOMAS: Just a couple of points on redirect,
2 Mr. Chairman.

3 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

4 by MR. THOMAS:

5 Q Let me direct this question to Dr. Herz. You
6 testified that Tiburon Center Exhibit No. 20 was
7 circulated for peer review and that you received back a
8 range of comments including a large number of favorable
9 comments. I wanted to ask you, did you receive comments
10 to the effect that given larger resources and more time,
11 there was further analysis that could have been performed
12 with this data and additional data could have been
13 gathered?

14 DR. HERZ: Yes, a number of comments that we
15 received spoke to the issue that what we were doing
16 appeared to be exploratory in nature and that there were a
17 number of additional comparisons and analyses that could
18 be performed if there was sufficient time and resources
19 available.

20 Q And were these the kind of comments that you meant
21 when you stated there was a range of both positive and
22 negative comments?

23 DR. HERZ: That's right.

24 Q Did any of these commentators indicate fundamental
25 disagreement with the conclusions you drew given your

1 limitations on time and resources, and the preliminary
2 nature of this investigation?

3 DR. HERZ: None of the peer reviewers to whom we
4 circulated the document fundamentally disagreed with our
5 conclusions. The most critical comments that we received
6 spoke to some of the statistical manipulations we used in
7 performing our analyses, but none of them disagreed with
8 the conclusions that we reached or felt that the work was
9 fatally flawed in any fashion.

10 Q Just a brief question or two on the salinity data.
11 You testified that it is your view that the data is
12 insufficient. We, of course, have had testimony during
13 the course of these proceedings on changes in levels of
14 salinity before and after the operation of the state and
15 federal water projects, and I believe you are familiar
16 with the State Water Contractors' Exhibit No. 266 and
17 Figure 3 from that document, for instance, which is a
18 figure showing those pre-and-post-project values.

19 DR. HERZ: Yes.

20 Q What does this documentation on changes of salinity
21 show for the spring months that are reflected there?

22 DR. HERZ: Well, it does suggest that there has
23 been an increase in salinity post-project.

24 Q Are the spring months of any particular
25 significance, in your judgment, based upon the research

1 you did on the relation between flows and fishery
2 resources?

3 DR. HERZ: Absolutely. As I have already
4 testified, the spring inflows are the most important
5 because they establish the conditions for spawning and
6 migration of a variety of species.

7 Q Now, I note that that figure presents information
8 on the average monthly salinity at the measuring stations
9 for those months of the year. Do you have a view on how
10 that graph might look had it used salinity levels only for
11 the low and critical flow years, rather than an average of
12 all the water years?

13 DR. HERZ: I think there's no question that there
14 would be a much more increase in salinity with those low
15 flow years.

16 Q And is there reason to be concerned that the
17 frequency of low and critical flow years has been
18 increasing since the construction of the water projects?

19 DR. HERZ: Yes, both for the reason you are
20 suggesting, that the potential increase in salinity which
21 would result with increases in dry and critical years, and
22 in terms of impact on abundance of the fish species and in
23 terms of other conditions in the estuary that are affected
24 by those flows.

25 MR. THOMAS: Mr. Chairman, I have no further

1 questions.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: I think there may be sort of a
3 contradiction between the first question you asked Dr.
4 Herz and what is has been stated by Dr. Leopold.

5 Dr. Leopold indicated the cause and effect and the
6 need for perhaps not only more data but better identified
7 data, and so on. Dr. Herz implied that we have enough
8 data and if we had enough money to massage it, we might
9 get better answers.

10 Frankly, I think there's a contradiction. I want
11 to know if Dr. Herz wanted to add anything more to what he
12 has just said.

13 DR. HERZ: Well, I think it is quite obvious that
14 the data we have on salinity is not adequate for anybody.
15 Nobody is satisfied with what we have. Right now it is
16 extremely difficult to really describe the salinity
17 conditions, but I think the purpose of this last exchange
18 was to show even in the contractors' report that there
19 have been increases.

20 MR. MAUGHAN: No, I said the first question Mr.
21 Thomas asked you concerning whether or not if you had more
22 time and more money whether you could have done more than
23 what you have already done, and I am sort of questioning
24 whether that is consistent with Dr. Leopold.

25 Maybe you have done all you can do because your

1 data won't permit you to do more than you have already
2 done.

3 Do you agree or disagree with that? It seems to me
4 that there's a contradiction.

5 DR. HERZ: There is one scientist I have talked to
6 who is actually a statistician who was very interested in
7 particularly looking at the salmon data because he feels
8 there's a lot more information in there that can be
9 extracted if the right techniques and procedures are used.

10 MR. MAUGHAN: Okay, I just wanted to know.

11 All right, do you want to offer your exhibits then?

12 MR. THOMAS: We move for the admission of Tiburon
13 Center Exhibit Nos. 20 through 31, including Exhibit 20A.

14 MR. MAUGHAN: Do you have any objections? Okay,
15 hearing none, they will be accepted.

16 MR. TAMBLYN: You didn't introduce 26 or 28, which
17 are statements of qualification for Michael Rozengurt and
18 Alice Rich.

19 MR. THOMAS: Let me amend that to pick up those
20 statements as well. I am handicapped for not having, for
21 some reason, a copy of the index in front of me. I need
22 to correct that, Mr. Chairman, just to be clear.

23 Apparently, what we should move to admit at this
24 time are Exhibit Nos. 20 through 27. We need not
25 introduce Exhibit 28, the resume of Alice Rich, because,

1 in fact, she didn't appear to testify, but we do move for
2 also admission of Exhibit No. 31 and Exhibit 20A.

3 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. Once again, any
4 objection? Hearing none, they will be received in
5 evidence.

6 (Romberg Tiburon Center
7 Exhibits 20 through 27, 20A
8 and 31, were received
9 in evidence.)

10 MR. MAUGHAN: Thank you, gentlemen. We are going
11 to take a break now. We still have two other direct
12 testimony plus four rebuttals. We sure want to get them
13 in today.

14 Fifteen minutes.

15 (Recess)

16 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, Mr. Sanger, you may go
17 ahead.

18 MR. SANGER: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. I am John
19 Sanger of Pettit & Martin for the Bay Institute.

20 Mr. Mortenson, you have previously been sworn in
21 these hearings; have you not?

22 MR. MORTENSON: Yes, I have.

23 MR. SANGER: Mr. Chairman, could I ask that the
24 record show that Mr. Mortenson's qualifications have been
25 previously introduced.

MR. MAUGHAN: Yes.

MR. SANGER: Just preliminarily, so there's no

1 confusion, if I could give advance notice of items to be
2 marked for identification?

3 MR. MAUGHAN: Yes, you may.

4 MR. SANGER: We have an errata sheet for Exhibit
5 49, which I think it would be appropriate to mark 49A.

6 MR. TAMBLYN: We have two volumes marked 49A and B.
7 Could you label this C?

8 MR. SANGER: That's fine. We have 38 copies for
9 the board and 40 or 50 additional copies for members of
10 the audience.

11 MR. MAUGHAN: That will be 49C.

12 (Bay Institute of San
13 Francisco Exhibit No. 49C was
marked for identification.)

14 MR. SANGER: Secondly, I just want to remark in
15 advance there will be six slides shown which I suggest be
16 marked in the order of appearance 59 through 64.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: Fine, or you can go A, B, C.

18 MR. SANGER: I think it would be less confusing.
19 There are two maps that will be left here with the board
20 that I request be marked for identification 65 and 66.
21 They are blowups of Figures 24 and 25 in the report.

22 MR. MAUGHAN: All right.

23 MR. SANGER: The remainder of the items to be shown
24 on the overhead projector will be figures or tables that
25 are in Exhibit 49A or 49B, and also, just for information

1 as a courtesy to the board and to the audience, we have
2 brought copies in advance, Bay Institute Exhibit 28, which
3 was introduced by reference, the Science Magazine article,
4 Nichols, Cloern, Luoma and Peterson called "The
5 Modification of an Estuary."

6 MR. MAUGHAN: All right.

7 (Slides marked for
8 identification as Exhibit Nos.
9 59 through 64, maps marked for
10 identification as Exhibit Nos.
11 65 and 66 of Bay Institute of
12 San Francisco.)

13 WILLIAM MORTENSON,

14 having been sworn, testified as follows:

15 DIRECT EXAMINATION

16 by MR. SANGER:

17 Q Mr. Mortenson, would you please describe the
18 research undertaken by you, which is the subject of
19 Exhibits 49A and B entitled "Investigation of Estuarine
20 Circulation in Suisun Bay," including the appendix.

21 A Yes. The objective of this study was simply as
22 stated, to investigate the dynamics of the null zone and
23 how the null zone and the position of it responded to
24 Delta outflow during the study period being from the end
25 of September, September 28 to October 28, 1986.

Q Would you provide us, please, a working definition
of the null zone as you have understood it?

1 residual motion. The term "residual motion" has been
2 defined previously, specifically by Larry Smith from the
3 U. S. Geological Survey. What we are talking about is
4 after you filter out the tidal velocity, you are left with
5 the net motion and that net motion is either directed
6 up-estuary or down-estuary. At the point where the
7 density driven landward net residual flow on the bottom
8 intersects the river inflow or the flow coming down the
9 river, at these two points it is defined as the zone of no
10 net motion.

11 Now, I would like to clarify, because a lot of
12 discussion has gone into the null zone and its
13 implications, and previous investigators have looked at it
14 in different ways. The null zone is really a boundary
15 layer, a boundary layer created by the interface of
16 freshwater and saltwater, and extends from the bottom up
17 in a curved line to the surface, using being further
18 seaward at the surface than at the bottom. At the same
19 time, it is not a point in the estuary, it is not a line,
20 what we are dealing with is essentially a curved surface.
21 Some of the longitudinal sections showing the salinity
22 gradient are essentially taken through the longitudinal
23 part of the estuary and show the null zone as a line.
24 The reason it is shown as a line in those cases is because
25 it's a cross-section through a surface.

1 So, what we are looking at then is not just how a
2 point changes, whether it be at the surface or at the
3 bottom, but how this surface, this boundary layer surface
4 changes in response to changes in Delta outflow.

5 Q All right. Before going into further detail on
6 methodology, and highly technical matters, could you
7 summarize the major findings of your research?

8 A Yes, I would like to do that with just a few
9 slides. Slide No. 1 here is just a satellite view of the
10 bay area and the Delta showing the different embayments.

11 I would like to go on to slide 2.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: Each of these have a number?

13 A The first one is 59, if we can just key them once
14 we will be referring to them as 1 through 6, which
15 correlates with 59 through 64.

16 All right, this is a view of San Francisco Bay
17 taken from offshore. In the lower center of the slide you
18 see the Golden Gate opening up into central bay, San Pablo
19 Bay up to the left side looking at the slide, and going
20 into South Bay down on the right side of the slide.

21 You can see from this slide, really, the dominance
22 of the ocean in the central part of the bay. The ocean
23 here flows into San Francisco Bay, into the central bay
24 through the deep Golden Gate, and then up to the north
25 into San Pablo Bay and into the south, and you can see

1 clearly here that the ocean-bay exchange which has been
2 testified to by the U. S. Geological Survey is just in its
3 infancy of being documented, dominates the central bay and
4 San Pablo Bay.

5 Now, as you go further up, if I may point on the
6 slide here, here is San Pablo Bay, right here we have a
7 narrow constrictions as we go into the strait. Up here on
8 the other end of the straight is Benicia, Suisun Bay.
9 This restriction changes the dynamics of the system.
10 Whereas, central bay and San Pablo Bay are dominated by
11 the ocean, as a result of the construction going to Suisun
12 Bay, we now have a system where the influence of the ocean
13 is tremendously reduced by this construction, and the
14 influence of the freshwater discharge into the dynamics of
15 the bay increase proportionally.

16 Next slide, please. Here we have a schematic of
17 the null zone that we have just previously defined showing
18 a net seaward residual flow on the surface and a net
19 landward residual flow on the bottom. In the area of
20 Suisun Bay, the little dots represent the turbidity
21 maximum or the zone of turbidity maximum which exists in
22 the region of the null zone.

23 Next slide, please. During most years, except for
24 dry and critically dry years, in the early spring the null
25 zone is positioned in San Pablo Bay. The exact Delta

1 outflow required to position the null zone in San Pablo
2 Bay has not yet been established and is one of the areas
3 where a lot of research needs to be going.

4 You can see San Pablo is shown in purple here and
5 you can just notice the size of it for right now, what is
6 important.

7 Next slide, please. This is a picture of Suisun
8 Bay. It's hard to see. I will point out on the lower
9 right-hand side, here is Montezuma Slough, Benicia is down
10 here, and this is Suisun Bay coming up here, and this is
11 all Grizzly Bay that you are seeing here.

12 Again, if you just notice the comparative size of
13 the Grizzly Bay shoal area. My study found that outflows,
14 measured Delta outflow by the DAYFLOW data measured at
15 Chipps Island for approximately 15,000 cubic feet per
16 second would position the null zone adjacent to this wide
17 shoal area of Grizzly Bay.

18 Now, I would like to show this schematically on
19 another exhibit that we have displayed here. This is
20 taken from Figure 24 of the report and what it shows is
21 this line shown right here represents the null zone. Now,
22 we found out with flows of 15,000 cubic feet per second
23 that we had a riverine flow in Suisun cutoff.

24 Q Let's clarify that. The line you are referring to
25 is the narrow orange, reddish-orange line?

1 A The narrow reddish-orange line extending from
2 approximately Chipps Island essentially down the estuary,
3 not across over here by Montezuma Slough.

4 What we discovered at a Delta outflow of 15,000
5 cubic feet per second is that we had a riverine flow,
6 meaning the residual flow in the surface and the bottom
7 was seaward in Suisun Cutoff shown here by the two red
8 arrows, red arrows indicating freshwater.

9 At the same time, in Ryer Roe channel, located here
10 in the center, we had an estuarine circulation, meaning
11 the net residual at the surface was seaward and the net
12 residual flow on the bottom was landward. Again, in the
13 main shipping channel we had estuarine circulation,
14 seaward flow on the surface, landward flow on the bottom.

15 If you can just put up the next exhibit, Bill, that
16 will be fine. During the course of our study, Delta
17 outflow dropped from approximately 14 to 16 thousand cubic
18 feet per second down to 9,000 cubic feet per second. When
19 that reduction in Delta outflow occurred, it was recorded
20 and observed by our meters located in the Suisun Cutoff
21 and what we observed is that at 9,000 cubic feet per
22 second an estuarine circulation developed in Suisun
23 Cutoff, meaning the residual flow at the bottom of Suisun
24 Cutoff reversed and went landward.

25 At the surface we still had the seaward flow. At

1 Ryer Roe channel here, we had an estuarine circulation as
2 in the previous slide, and the same in the main shipping
3 channel.

4 Consequently, at this reduced Delta outflow of
5 9,000 cubic feet per second, the null zone passed through
6 Suisun Cutoff and so this can be shown schematically again
7 by the location of the red line, the red-orange line.
8 Here again, it moves some up in Chipps Island, but here it
9 moved back through here, so now it is somewhere in this
10 area here.

11 Now, if you notice, in the previous slide --

MR. WALSH: This is from when to when?

13 A This was from September 28, 1986, to October 28,
14 1986, and I will go into more detail on the hydrology of
15 when it changed in just a few minutes. I want to give you
16 a quick overview here.

17 MR. WALSH: Okay.

18 A If you notice here at 15,000 cubic feet per second,
19 the null zone is adjacent to the large shoal area in
20 Grizzly Bay but at the 9,000 cubic feet per second you
21 will notice that the null zone has shrunk, has shifted
22 upward and the size of the surface area is smaller, now
23 being only adjacent to Honker Bay.

24 Again, the main thing is that as freshwater comes
25 down and runs into the saltwater, it has a tendency, being

1 lighter, to go over it as previous investigators have
2 shown, but it also has a tendency to go to the northern
3 side of the estuary. Consequently, at all depths and in
4 both outflows of 9,000 cubic feet per second and 15,000
5 cubic feet per second, the salinity in Suisun Cutoff was
6 fresher or the salinity was lower than in the main
7 shipping channel, creating essentially a net horizontal
8 flow.

9 What I did was compare the salinity distribution on
10 the bottom meter of Suisun Cutoff at the start of our
11 study when Delta outflows were approximately 14 to 16
12 thousand cubic feet per second with what they were at the
13 same meter when the outflows had dropped to 9,000 cubic
14 feet per second.

15 This first overlay here shows the data set, and I
16 will explain this briefly. The most important thing to
17 look at here is the salinity. The salinity is shown by
18 this line right here. Down here is the salinity in parts
19 per thousand. This is zero, five, ten, fifteen, up to
20 twenty-five parts per thousand. If you notice, salinity
21 distribution went from below detection right here, this
22 means it went below 1.5 parts per thousand, which is the
23 limit of the sensitivity of the meter, up to the shoulder
24 here of about 3 parts per thousand, and then, climbed up
25 to approximately 5 or 6 parts per thousand.

1 So, on every ebb tide the water was fresh at the
2 bottom, below 1.5 parts per thousand. At high tide, high
3 slack approximately, there was 6 parts per thousand.
4 This, again, is at 15,000 cubic feet per second at the
5 beginning of the study period.

6 Next slide.

7 MS. LEIDIGH: Could you just identify this figure
8 and the exhibit that it is from?

9 A Figure 22, ex --

10 MR. SANGER: Q Exhibit 49A, Figure 22.

11 A This is Figure 23 of the exhibit. Again now, we
12 are looking at the last few days of the study period and
13 again, let's look at the salinity variation over the tidal
14 cycle. Again, here is the salinity line, this dotted
15 line. Here again, is the same scale on the zero, five,
16 ten, fifteen parts per thousand.

17 What we are seeing at the same meter again, this is
18 the bottom meter in Suisun Cutoff, we see that it never
19 drops below 4 parts per thousand on the ebb tide.

20 All right, and on high slack tide here, it is
21 reaching up to almost 14 parts per thousand. So, we then
22 have a change in the salinity distribution in Suisun
23 Cutoff from a salinity that ranged from below detection,
24 1.5 parts per thousand to 6 parts per thousand at Delta
25 outflows of approximately 15,000 cubic feet per second;

1 and when the Delta outflow was reduced to approximately
2 9,000 cubic feet per second, we see this significantly
3 increased salinity regime going from 4 or 5 parts per
4 thousand all the way up to 14 parts per thousand.

5 Q Mr. Mortenson, what is the significance of the
6 shift in the null zone from being adjacent to the shoals
7 in Grizzly Bay to adjacent to the shoals of Honker Bay at
8 the different levels of Delta outflow?

9 A The null zone, because it is a definable position
10 in the estuary, can be quantitatively related to Delta
11 outflow as shown by the data I just presented. In
12 addition, we have heard testimony from California Fish and
13 Game of the importance of the location of the null zone to
14 the total biomass accumulation of the estuary.

15 Mr. Chadwick, of California Fish and Game,
16 testified that the farther west in Suisun Bay the null
17 zone was located, the higher the biomass of phytoplankton
18 and zooplankton would be in the estuary. Data by previous
19 investigators has shown the same thing, when the null zone
20 is positioned in San Pablo Bay you have a higher density
21 of both phytoplankton and zooplankton than as the null
22 zone shifts and moves upstream.

23 The reason for this is that you can envision the
24 shoal areas almost as a field, a crop field, in terms of
25 acreage. When the null zone is positioned adjacent to the

1 larger shoal areas in San Pablo Bay, the amount of total
2 biomass that can accumulate, or the standing crop, is
3 significantly increased.

4 Now, this can be compared then, you can compare the
5 relative productivity or total biomass production in the
6 estuary by looking at the surface area of the shoals in
7 this overlay here which is Table 2 of our exhibit, you
8 will see that the shoal area in the second row is 154
9 square kilometers in San Pablo Bay. In Suisun Bay it is
10 52 square kilometers, and in Honker Bay the shoal area is
11 reduced down to 12 square kilometers, so what we have then
12 is essentially these are like fields, crop acreage.

13 If the null zone is positioned in San Pablo Bay, we
14 have this total area of 154 square kilometers where the
15 biomass accumulate when it's reduced, when it shifts to
16 Suisun Bay, we have 52 square kilometers, and when it goes
17 to Honker Bay, it's down to 12 square kilometers.

18 Now, the study that I was investigating, the Delta
19 outflow shifted from 15,000 cubic feet per second which
20 put it adjacent to Grizzly Bay, which is shown by the
21 Suisun Bay, the 52 here, and at 9,000 it was adjacent to
22 Honker Bay which only had a shoal area of 12 square
23 kilometers, essentially proportionally four to one
24 between Grizzly Bay and Suisun Bay.

25 Q Subsequent to your study, did you analyze the

1 availability of Delta outflows to determine the frequency
2 with which this occurrence would have occurred
3 historically; that is, the difference between Delta
4 outflow at 14 to 16 thousand cubic feet per second versus
5 Delta outflow at 9,000 cubic feet per second or less?

6 A I took a look at the unimpaired natural Delta
7 outflows as presented by the State Water Resources Control
8 Board in their errata book to their original exhibit, that
9 is shown in Table 6. You have that overlay?

10 Here, for example, this is the Delta outflow under
11 natural conditions as calculated by the State Water
12 Resources Control Board and all I did was use this table.
13 Any variations in these numbers would change the
14 percentages.

15 I then compared these numbers month by month with
16 DAYFLOW values, the actual values measured by DAYFLOW for
17 the years of overlap. Now, the DAYFLOW data only goes
18 back to 1959. So, what I did was look at this table and
19 said, in April, when were the flows 16,000 cubic feet per
20 second or greater, sufficient to place the zone of
21 entrapment, place the null zone adjacent to Grizzly Bay,
22 and then I compared that to DAYFLOW data to see when, as
23 the result of all the upstream development, water
24 resources development and changes in the system have
25 occurred, has the Delta outflow been reduced to

1 approximately 9,000 cubic feet per second.

2 When I made that comparison, the results are this:
3 In April 37 percent of the years of the 20 years of
4 overlap, the water resources development caused a shift of
5 the null zone being adjacent to Grizzly Bay to being
6 adjacent to Honker Bay. In May it was 58 percent of the
7 years that this shift was shown to occur. In June it was
8 84 percent of the years, and in July 42 percent.

9 Now, I only compared these years because these are
10 biologically the most important months of the year for the
11 organisms. Now, again, these percentages are based upon
12 two numbers, the calculated Delta outflow as presented in
13 DAYFLOW and the numbers presented in this table. Any
14 changes in either of those two numbers will change these
15 percentages somewhat, but they are in the ballpark.

16 Q All right. Mr. Mortenson, would you provide some
17 degree of summary of the specifics that support these
18 conclusions based on the data you collected and analyzed?

19 A We have just briefly summarized the major
20 conclusions of the study.

21 Now I would like to go into a little bit of data
22 which we obtained which supported these conclusions.

23 To start briefly with the methodology, what we have
24 here is a current meter array at the three locations,
25 Suisun Cutoff, Ryer Roe and the main shipping channel.

1 This array was deployed and what we have here are ENDECO
2 174 current meters.

3 MS. LEIDIGH: Mr. Mortenson, would you identify the
4 figure and the exhibit?

5 MR. SANGER: Sorry, Figure 12, Exhibit 49A.

6 A What we deployed here was the ENDECO 174 current
7 meter. It has a tether and are hooked on with cables, and
8 I have a big weight here and a subsurface float to hold
9 this cable tight, and then the meters are hooked on here.
10 The meters every five minutes record the temperature,
11 conductivity, the direction and velocity of the current,
12 and store this information on magnetic tape.

13 The bottom meter was placed two meters off the
14 bottom and the middle meter was five meters off the
15 bottom, and three meters from the bottom meter, and the
16 upper meter was -- due to the tidal fluctuations, and what
17 we have seen in the difference between the freshwater
18 flowing over the brackish water, it was important to
19 design a system that maintained the top meter one and a
20 half meters below the surface.

21 It would be nice to have it a little bit closer,
22 but if you get it a little closer to the surface, wave
23 action interferes with it and you have a little more
24 problem with the data.

25 So, this is the mechanism that was used and

1 deployed in each of the three locations to obtain the
2 data. This data was collected and stored on magnetic
3 cassettes. This was then sent to Ocean Surveyors,
4 Incorporated, from whom we leased the meters, and the data
5 was processed. After that, the graphic presentation of
6 the data is shown in the previous figures in which we were
7 discussing the salinity distribution were prepared.

8 Figure 2 here of the report shows the location in
9 Grizzly Bay that the meters were deployed. The black dots
10 show the location in Suisun Cutoff, Ryer Roe channel and
11 the main shipping channel where the meters were deployed.

12 This is the Delta outflow as taken from the
13 preliminary readings of DAYFLOW data.

14 Q This is Table 3 in Exhibit 49A.

15 A The column outlined in yellow is the Delta outflow
16 index for September. If you notice, the Delta outflow was
17 running anywhere between 5,000, 6,000 at the beginning of
18 September. At mid-September, by September 15, it was up
19 to 9,000, right here. And then, by September 20, it was
20 up to 16,000 cubic feet per second, and it reached 18,000
21 cubic feet per second on September 26. On September 28,
22 as I mentioned, is when we deployed the meters.

23 So, in the initial part of the study period, we had
24 a Delta outflow of approximately 16 to 18 thousand cubic
25 feet per second.

1 Now, I am sorry, I don't have the October
2 hydrological data, but if you look in the exhibit on Table
3 3 for October, you will see the continuation. Essentially
4 all that happened is the flow dropped down to about 15,000
5 cubic feet per second and stayed that way until October 1,
6 when the flows were 14,450 cubic feet per second and they
7 stayed that way until October 14. On October 14, they
8 started dropping and by October 19 were down to 9,000
9 cubic feet per second and remained at that level for the
10 rest of the study.

11 One or two days, on October 26 they were down to
12 7,000 cubic feet per second. Okay. This is the --

13 Q This is Figure 13 of 49A.

14 A This is the progressive vector diagram for the
15 surface, mid-depth and bottom meters in Ryer Roe Cutoff.
16 Now, I will explain this figure. You notice there is a
17 north arrow up in the corner. These are the axis running
18 along the channel, and across the channel essentially
19 where the meters were set up. Up at the surface here,
20 this line here, I drew a line indicating this is a surface
21 meter. Then, I superimposed the surface residual current
22 or the progressive vector diagram, the middle progressive
23 vector diagram and the bottom progressive vector diagram,
24 all to the same figure for illustrative purposes.

25 A progressive vector diagram is made by taking the

1 five-minute readings of direction and velocities on the
2 current meter tapes, averaging them into 30-minute
3 readings and coming up with a vector for every half-hour,
4 so, for each half-hour of the deployment we end up with
5 one vector showing direction and velocity for that time
6 interval. These are then plotted head to tail for the
7 whole time period, and what you end up with is a diagram
8 that looks like these, the progressive vectors.

9 What is important to note about this is that to the
10 west, being this way, seaward, east being this way,
11 landward, the surface meter, going back and forth with the
12 tidal cycle, its overall progression over time is seaward,
13 indicated with a residual seaward flow.

14 At the bottom, you can see we have just the
15 opposite. We have a landward flow, residual flow that is
16 landward on the bottom. This is characteristic of an
17 estuarine circulation.

18 What we can conclude from this is that the null
19 zone was east of this station, somewhere east. How far
20 east, we don't know. Data was collected here. All we can
21 tell from this set of data is that the null zone was east
22 of Ryer Roe Station.

23 Next one, please. This is Appendix 1A, Figure 4A.

24 Q 49B.

25 Q What I would like to show you here are the residual

1 currents. What I had calculated was the long-channel
2 residual and the cross-channel residual current. This is
3 the bottom meter at Ryer Roe and the positive direction,
4 meaning this way, is landward, so you can see if you look
5 at the bottom meter in Ryer Roe, and these are in
6 centimeters per second, so this is five, ten, fifteen
7 centimeters per second, and the net residual would average
8 from ten to fifteen centimeters per second landward.

9 The landward direction is with the flood tide
10 up-estuary of landward, and you can see it was
11 continuously landward.

12 This is Figure 14 of Exhibit --

13 Q 49A.

14 A This is the progressive vector diagram for the
15 mid-depth and bottom meter in Suisun Cutoff. Again,
16 notice the north arrow up here. Landward is to the east
17 or this way, seaward is to the west. The surface meter
18 data, essentially the tape recorder ate the tape for the
19 surface meter, so we didn't get any data back on the
20 surface meter.

21 The mid-depth meter is shown here by this line
22 here, the progressive vector, and it is seaward as would
23 be the surface meter. The bottom meter, as you notice,
24 also has a tendency to go seaward during this time, during
25 the first part of the study period, actually down to

1 October 25. This number is October 25.

2 Now, if you look carefully at this during this
3 period right here there was a tendency to head back
4 landward. Again, when you get down here, there was a
5 tendency to go landward. This is a response to the neap
6 spring tidal cycle as you heard evidence in previous
7 testimony.

8 During periods of neap tidal conditions when we
9 have reduced tidal energy from the turbulent mixing, we
10 get increased stratification of the water column and
11 there's an increase in the density-driven circulation on
12 the bottom. So, during neap periods the residual
13 circulation or the residual flow on the bottom tends to be
14 up estuary.

15 So, here is one of the neap tidal conditions that
16 occurred and here it is occurring again. Now, from this
17 state on, we would expect that as we move from neap to
18 spring tidal conditions to proceed back this way, so that
19 the overall progressive vector diagram would be in this
20 direction. However, as you can see from this data that
21 starting around October 25, as this should have been
22 progressing back this way, there was a significant
23 increase in the bottom residual landward current flowing
24 this way.

25 And this is the change in the residual current that

1 was picked up as the result of the reduction in Delta
2 outflow. So, you can see during this whole period here
3 with 15,000 cubic feet per second the residual flow was
4 seaward characteristic of the riverine flow.

5 From here, from October 25 on, we had the bottom
6 residual landward and the mid-depth and the surface would
7 have been residual seaward characteristic of the estuarine
8 circulation.

9 So, it is this reversal from a riverine flow in
10 Suisun Cutoff to an estuarine circulation that's probably
11 the most significant finding of this study and gave us a
12 control on the system so we had some idea of where the
13 null zone was positioned.

14 From what we can tell from this diagram is that for
15 the first part of the study up to this point up here the
16 null zone was west of this station. From this point on
17 the null zone moved past the station and was now located
18 to the east of the station.

19 This is Figure 16 in Exhibit 49A. Now, if you note
20 right here is the residual current at the bottom meter
21 from the time period October 19 to October 25, and here
22 you are seeing a slight landward residual flow. This is
23 during neap tidal conditions. October 23 was the actual
24 neap tide, the weakest tidal energy and during that time
25 we had a slight up-estuary residual flow.

1 As we passed the neap tidal period and were heading
2 into the spring tidal condition, this line should have
3 come back down or would have come back down and gone to a
4 seaward direction if Delta outflow had stayed the same,
5 but as shown in the previous thing on this day is when the
6 significant increase occurred. We had a jump from 10
7 centimeters to 27 centimeters per second landward in the
8 residual flow, and this is essentially the impact of the
9 reduced Delta outflow and what it did to the residual
10 flow.

11 MR. MAUGHAN: May I ask how much longer on the
12 direct? You estimated 30 minutes and we are about 45 now.

13 A Real quick, we are almost there.

14 These two situations are shown schematically again
15 in Figures 24 and 25, which we had shown up here. Again,
16 if you notice here at a Delta outflow of 14 to 16 thousand
17 cubic feet per second we have a riverine surface and
18 bottom flow in Suisun Cutoff. We had an estuarine flow
19 here, surface flow seaward, bottom landward and we had an
20 estuarine flow here.

21 The null zone being shown schematically is located
22 somewhere in this direction. Again, what we can tell, it
23 was east of this point up here somewhere and it was west
24 of this point up here somewhere, getting a general
25 direction along these lines.

1 Figure 25 is the same schematic shown at a Delta
2 outflow of 9,000 cubic feet per second, and here you see
3 the switch from a riverine flow which we had in the
4 previous Figure 24 to an estuarine flow, the surface flow
5 being seaward, the bottom residual flow being landward,
6 again indicating that the null zone had moved through here
7 and was now east of this point.

8 Simultaneous with the study I was carrying out the
9 Interagency Hydro Dynamic Study Group was out conducting
10 their investigation and the data I am going to show you
11 right now comes from their investigation. It was taken on
12 October 17 during the spring tidal conditions. And this
13 data was collected using the required instrumentation that
14 was described by Jim Arthur and Lon Hachmeister, and these
15 are salinity profiles obtained from that data set.

16 MR. SANGER: Q This is Figure 18, Exhibit 49A.

17 A What's important to notice here, this is on October
18 17, station L-657 was located within 50 to 100 meters of
19 my station in Suisun Cutoff. All right. If you look here
20 at the salinity you see that during spring tidal
21 conditions the salinity near the surface was 4.1 parts per
22 thousand and at the bottom was 4.4 parts per thousand,
23 very little salinity stratification. The lines are
24 almost vertical.

25 Next slide, please. This is on October 17, the

1 same date, Figure 21 -- on the same date but in the main
2 shipping channel, same station, meaning in the same
3 cross-section of the estuary, station C-657, and if you
4 notice here -- excuse me, let me find this figure -- okay,
5 I will have to talk about that one -- that overlay was not
6 there.

7 Figure 19, the same station, L-657, the salinity
8 varied from 6.4 parts per thousand at the surface, 6.4
9 parts per thousand at the bottom, again, vertically
10 homogeneous from top to bottom, vertically mixed, but if
11 you compare this stations with station L-657 from the
12 previous figure, you will see that it is 2 parts per
13 thousand greater throughout the water column.

14 So, throughout the water column at Suisun Cutoff it
15 was 2 parts per thousand fresher or vice versa, the main
16 shipping channel had a salinity of 2 parts per thousand
17 higher.

18 Next slide. During neap tidal conditions on
19 October 27, the interagency group collected the same data
20 at the same station, and looking at this data, this is
21 Figure 20, station L-657, you will see that the salinity
22 varied from essentially 6.1 at the surface to -- looks
23 like 10.8 at the bottom, so here during neap tidal
24 conditions -- all right, on October 23 you can see we had
25 a decrease in the tidal energy during neap tidal

1 conditions and the decrease in tidal energy allowed the
2 freshwater buoyancy to stratify the water column resulting
3 in a 5 parts per thousand difference between the surface
4 and the bottom salinity.

5 Now you notice this again goes from 6 to 10. If we
6 look at the next slide collected in the center channel,
7 Figure 21 of the report, station C-657, in the center
8 channel the salinity goes from 7.8 near the surface to
9 12.8 parts per thousand at the bottom, again neap tidal
10 conditions, weak tidal mixing, stratification of the water
11 column and a significant increase in the salinity
12 distribution.

13 But again, if you will notice, the salinity is 2
14 parts per thousand higher than it was in the Suisun Cutoff
15 channel.

16 MR. SANGER: That terminates the summary of the
17 study and the direct examination.

18 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, thank you.

19 Will you indicate by a show of hands who would like
20 to cross-examine. Any staff -- oh, Mr. Schulz, you are
21 too far back there in the dark, I can barely see you.

22 MR. SCHULZ: This will be short.

23 CROSS-EXAMINATION

24 by MR. SCHULZ:

25 Q I have two areas of inquiry, one predictable.

1 Your Table 5, pages 63 and 64.

2 A Yes.

3 Q You have used, have you not, the hypothetical
4 unimpaired -- is that what you mean by natural?

5 A I'm sorry, Table 5, page 64?

6 Q Yes. When you were doing your comparison, your
7 comparison was based on the assumption that the channels
8 are channelized, that the reclamation has occurred, but no
9 water is being used in the valley? That is the basis of
10 your comparison; is that correct?

11 A What I used, as stated, was the DAYFLOW values
12 which are what is stated here in Table 5. These are the
13 DAYFLOW values as actually reported in DAYFLOW for Delta
14 outflow and Table 6 that I compared it with, which was the
15 Delta outflows under natural conditions, which my
16 understanding is that these are the unimpaired conditions
17 and they have all the assumptions built into them, as we
18 previously discussed in great detail when this was
19 presented originally.

20 Q Okay. So, the levees are in, the reclamation has
21 occurred but there is no water use occurring, that is what
22 you understand those assumptions to be?

23 A Right.

24 Q Do you have any opinion as to what the comparison
25 between DAYFLOW and the natural flows would be if it were

1 a true natural condition?

2 A I am not a hydrologist and I did not look at that
3 question at all. I just took these numbers as the numbers
4 presented. As I stated, any change in these numbers or in
5 the Delta outflow estimates would change those
6 percentages.

7 Q Okay. Now, there was one thing in your testimony
8 that sounded to me a little different than the testimony I
9 had earlier heard. My understanding in terms of the
10 accumulation of phytoplankton in the Suisun Bay-Grizzly
11 Bay area was a function of the location of the entrapment
12 zone which is a function of the null zone.

13 Does that accord with your understanding?

14 A The term null zone has a precise meaning. We use
15 that as previously described when residency time in that
16 area occurs and it varies from a salinity of 1.5 parts per
17 thousand to 6 parts per thousand.

18 When we collect the biological data, all the
19 biological data is collected in relationship -- or I
20 should say displayed in relationship to the salinity
21 gradient. Now, the concept of the entrapment zone was
22 introduced in previously testimony. The entrapment zone
23 is a more vague term. It is not defined as the null zone
24 is. It is greater than the null zone. It extends
25 somewhat in front of the null zone and a certain distance

1 behind the null zone.

2 I, personally, don't like to use the entrapment
3 zone because it is a much vaguer term. Null zone is
4 something all scientists agree what it is pretty much and
5 the range that we are talking about. The entrapment zone,
6 which is larger than the null zone, includes the null zone
7 in it and is a much more vague term and is improperly
8 understood in many respects, and all the biology that is
9 done is related to the salinity gradient and not to the
10 turbidity maximum, even though the turbidity maximum
11 occurs in this zone and it is referred to loosely as the
12 zone of entrapment.

13 Q Okay, so you don't have an opinion as to how far
14 downstream on your exhibit, Figures 24 and 25, the zone of
15 entrapment would extend with the null zone at the
16 locations that you have shown there?

17 A No, I would not venture a guess on that because
18 there is no data to show exactly where that is.

19 MR. SCHULZ: Okay, that's all I have.

20 A I would like to add one more thing to that. Again,
21 the biological data that is collected is related to the
22 salinity gradient so it can be related to the null zone,
23 and I have actually a few examples of the zooplankton data
24 and how it relates to the salinity gradient which we can
25 match to the null zone, but there is no data that relates

1 it to the turbidity maximum that I am aware of.

2 MR. SCHULZ: Okay, fine. That's all I have.

3 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, thank you.

4 MS. LEIDIGH: Staff has no questions.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: Board members. All right, Mr.

6 Sanger, you offer these exhibits, I assume?

7 MR. SANGER: Yes, we offer Exhibits 49A, B and C,
8 and Exhibits 59 through 66.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: Any objection? Hearing none, they
10 are accepted into evidence. thny very much, gentlemen.

11 (Bay Institute of San
12 Francisco Exhibits 49A, B and
13 C, and Exhibits 59 through 66
were received into evidence.)

14 MR. MAUGHAN: We will move along to Mr. Dawdy. I
15 would encourage you, Mr. Dawdy, I appreciate your coming
16 at the end, but anything you can do to summarize and
17 highlight your main points will be appreciated.

18 DAVID DAWDY,
19 having been sworn, testified as follows:

20 MR. DAWDY: My name is David Dawdy and I have been
21 sworn before, and I am representing myself, and for the
22 information of the Water Resources Control Board, my
23 address is 3055 23rd Avenue, San Francisco, 94132, and
24 that the Bay Institute merely delivered my stuff for me.
25 I am not representing the Bay Institute and I don't get

1 mail at the Bay Institute.

2 I turned in three exhibits. The first was my
3 qualifications, which was prepared by me and it states my
4 qualifications. I have had some 30 years of experience as
5 a hydrologist. I have a Bachelor's Degree in History, a
6 Master's Degree in Statistics, 25 years of experience with
7 the U. S. Geological Survey, and 20 of those years in
8 research or administration.

9 One of my last jobs in the Geological Survey was
10 Assistant District Chief of the California District for
11 the Water Resources Division where I was the Assistant
12 District Chief in charge of programs, the technical
13 program.

14 My last job with the U. S. Geological Survey was as
15 Research Adviser for the Surface Water Research Program,
16 the national program in the Water Resources Division.

17 I have published papers as shown in my bio-data and
18 I have held several positions in the scientific community.
19 I am a member of several scientific organizations. I have
20 been the Chairman of the U. S. National Committee for the
21 International Association of Hydrological Sciences which
22 is a subcommittee of the National Academy of Sciences, and
23 I have served on several committees of the National
24 Research Council.

25 At present, I am on the committee on the Glenn

1 Canyon Environmental Study for the National Research
2 Council of the National Academy of Sciences and I have
3 been in private practice for the last ten years.

4 I would like to discuss only part of my testimony
5 that was submitted.

6 First, on page 8 of my testimony, my Exhibit 3 -- my
7 Exhibit 2 is merely an executive summary and Exhibit 3 is
8 the written testimony. On page 8 I have a table which
9 shows the natural draining of the overflow areas, the
10 overflow basins in the central valley, particularly in the
11 Sacramento valley.

12 As we all know, the natural channels in the
13 Sacramento valley in particular were contained within
14 natural levees. When the waters overflows, those
15 levees -- which it did periodically but not every year,
16 then it would flow into the overflow basins and flow down
17 those overflow basins to the lower end and then back into
18 the system through a series of sloughs.

19 And as we realize, levees, even when man tries to
20 keep them from breaking, break. Natural levees break more
21 than man-made levees so that when the water flowed into
22 these natural overflow areas, flowed down to the lower end
23 and ponded, it would eventually overtop the natural
24 levees, immediately take out part of that levee and create
25 a slough as it flowed into the lower end.

1 So, the lower end of these natural overflow basins
2 were typified by sloughs and, in fact, this particular
3 exhibit shows a series of elevations for the lower end of
4 the Yolo basin in particular from the 1925 river
5 profile -- actually, that should be reference 6 rather
6 than reference 10 there, I think, at least I have it so
7 marked on my page here, and what I have shown here is the
8 name of the sloughs, the station miles above the mouth,
9 the mouth being at the outlet into Suisun Bay, the bottom
10 elevation of the slough, and then, for the Sacramento
11 River where the slough enters the Sacramento River, the
12 bottom of the Sacramento River, and the height of the
13 natural levee.

14 The first difference is the difference between the
15 bottom elevation of the slough and the height of the
16 natural levee showing that the levees were some 20 feet
17 down below the elevation of these natural levees.

18 Then I have the elevation of the adjacent land, the
19 adjacent land on the other side of the natural levees, and
20 then, the difference there, which shows the difference in
21 elevation between the bottom of the slough and the
22 elevation of the adjacent land.

23 This shows that the sloughs cut in from, say, 10 to
24 15 feet deep into that adjacent land and, therefore, had
25 the capability of draining. So, this gives an idea of how

1 these systems worked.

2 Now, there was a figure that was shown by the water
3 users. It was Figure 2 and I don't know what exhibit, I
4 forgot to mark it on here, but this figure was shown in
5 their presentation, and please note that it says "not to
6 scale." Let's put it to scale.

7 MS. LEIDIGH: For the record, the title of this
8 figure is "Typical Cross-Section of Central Valley, Not to
9 Scale (showing principal geomorphic features and natural
10 vegetation)." And it is a drawing with the river channel
11 in the center and other features off to the side.

12 MR. DAWDY: Yes, it shows the river channel, it
13 shows the natural levee, it shows the flood basin.

14 MR. LITTLEWORTH: I don't want to be too technical
15 here, but Mr. Dawdy is now beginning to go beyond the
16 testimony of his exhibit. In essence, he is beginning
17 rebuttal, and I guess I don't really care if he puts in
18 rebuttal, I just want to make sure he gets one shot.

19 If he goes into rebuttal now and then goes into
20 rebuttal later --

21 MR. DAWDY: This is not meant to be rebuttal. It
22 is to interpret my table.

23 MR. LITTLEWORTH: Actually, he is using a table out
24 of our exhibit, which I think is rebuttal and has nothing
25 to do with his own exhibit. I don't really want to insist

1 that he sit down and get back up again. I just want to be
2 sure if he is going into rebuttal he gets one shot at it.

3 MR. WALSH: He could do the same thing if he didn't
4 use your exhibit and drew on the chalkboard.

5 MR. LITTLEWORTH: I don't know if he is complaining
6 about ours or wants to just kind of talk about his own.
7 If he wants to talk about his own, that's direct. If he
8 wants to complain about ours, that's rebuttal.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: Do you understand, Mr. Dawdy, you
10 only have one shot. That's clear?

11 MR. DAWDY: I have one shot at my exhibit. All
12 right, I will defer and merely say that if we put my data
13 into context it shows quite well that the Sacramento River
14 cuts down to 25 feet down below the natural levees and
15 that the sloughs cut down into the adjoining land so that
16 they can drain the overflow lands into the Sacramento
17 River. That was the point I was trying to make and I was
18 hoping that I could be helpful to the board and to the
19 water users and show them a little bit of scale for their
20 on exhibit.

21 MR. MAUGHAN: You can do that now or later, but not
22 at both times.

23 MR. DAWDY: No, I will defer.

24 MR. WALSH: Does that mean you will do it later?

25 MR. DAWDY: No, I probably will not do it later in

1 that case. I just think one should keep in mind that is
2 what I was trying to show.

3 My figures show I was trying to interpret it
4 graphically. That's all.

5 MR. WALSH: Why don't you give me that again being
6 that we aren't to get it later.

7 MR. DAWDY: As long as it doesn't prejudice me, I
8 will do it. Okay.

9 What I am saying is that if we were to have a
10 figure here that had a cross-section on a chalkboard as
11 you suggested, we would have --

12 MS. LEIDIGH: Mr. Dawdy --

13 MR. DAWDY: I am not wanting to violate the rule of
14 the Chair, Mr. Chairman; what must I do?

15 MR. MAUGHAN: You go ahead and explain. If you are
16 not going to come back later, you can use it right now.

17 MR. DAWDY: I am coming back later on this
18 particular --

19 MR. MAUGHAN: I mean on this particular point. I
20 didn't want to convey to you that you couldn't rebut other
21 things, but you can't do it twice --

22 MR. DAWDY: No, I wasn't planning --

23 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, then, you can use it as
24 long as you don't use that same point again. Sorry I
25 didn't explain it properly, but we just don't want you to

1 do the same thing twice.

2 MR. DAWDY: I actually would prefer at this point
3 because of the objection --

4 MR. MAUGHAN: That's all right.

5 MR. DAWDY: Up here, if we start off at the bottom
6 elevation of the slough, let's say here is zero, and we
7 are talking about Babel Slough because it's the bottom,
8 the elevation of the slough is at plus one. It is
9 somewhere in here. There happen to be some three, six,
10 eight sloughs I picked out in this particular fifty-mile
11 reach that drain into the Sacramento River. The bottom of
12 the Sacramento is some six feet below that, so it is down
13 here.

14 The natural levee is 22 feet up here. The adjacent
15 land is at 10 feet, which is about halfway there and let's
16 put the natural levee over here and the river over here so
17 we can draw this a little bit different. The natural
18 levees do overflow, they do allow the water to pond down
19 here, but this water in the sloughs drains these overflow
20 basins and drains into the Sacramento, and the Sacramento,
21 if it is running ten feet deep, let's say at this point,
22 has ten feet of levee there containing it, but still can
23 receive water and put water into the slough at some flows
24 and receive it back at lower flows, so the sloughs at the
25 lower end can receive water from the Sacramento and then

1 drain back into the Sacramento.

2 But also, when they are not overflowing, those
3 natural levees are ten to twenty feet up above the water.
4 That puts it in perspective sort of.

5 Now, my next slide I want to show and discuss is on
6 my page 10, a figure of contemporary count of the area of
7 tules, and the point that I want to make here is that this
8 contemporary count describes the location of the tules and
9 the amounts, and they come out to some 600 to 700 thousand
10 acres rather than over 900,000 that were suggested in the
11 appendix, the testimony that was given in the --

12 MR. MAUGHAN: Here is where I think you --

13 MR. DAWDY: This is the amount of tules.

14 MR. MAUGHAN: Don't compare it with something else
15 unless you want to make rebuttal. Just put down what you
16 think it is.

17 MR. DAWDY: Part of the problem here is that in
18 rebuttal testimony earlier the water users brought forward
19 some data and this was done before I saw their testimony.
20 This was done, this was handed in prior to seeing their
21 exhibits for this.

22 MR. MAUGHAN: That isn't the point here. If you
23 want it to appear twice --

24 MR. DAWDY: No, I am actually basing it on the
25 numbers that they gave. I am basing it on numbers that

1 they gave in rebuttal previously.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: Just give us your numbers.

3 MR. DAWDY: These are --

4 MR. SANGER: Mr. Chairman, it seems to me the
5 witness is being unduly hampered. Dr. Fox appeared twice,
6 once in rebuttal and again on the same subject in direct.
7 As a matter of fact, Mr. Dawdy proposes to reverse the
8 order of appearance and appear twice, which is the same
9 subject --

10 MR. MAUGHAN: He can appear twice. I don't want
11 him to testify and make comparisons now and then two hours
12 later from now get back up and say the same thing. That's
13 all I am trying to say.

14 MR. SANGER: Perhaps it could be explained that you
15 just don't want him to repeat himself, which would
16 preclude him from returning.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: Correct, and I thought I tried to say
18 that. If I said it imperfectly, I didn't mean to do it
19 that way.

20 MR. SANGER: I don't think he has fully understood.

21 MR. MAUGHAN: I think you are right.

22 MR. DAWDY: The point I am getting at is I want to
23 use an exhibit that was provided for this hearing, and I
24 guess that would be rebuttal, so let me pass that.

25 MR. MAUGHAN: You can use it, but don't repeat it

1 when you come up again. That's all. You can do it, but
2 you can only do it once.

3 MR. DAWDY: We get one shot at it.

4 Well, to put my report in context, and the thrust
5 of what I am going to do is read from my report of
6 historical evidence which I got intrigued with
7 tremendously. I took a map which was provided for
8 delineation of the prehistoric natural vegetation, I guess
9 it was called, and I then want to use that for a location
10 of some of the descriptions of the historical explorers
11 that are contained in my report.

12 Before I get into that, just so it won't confuse
13 you, let me say that in addition to my estimate of areas
14 of tules, there was quite a bit of discussion of annual
15 tule fires and their effect. So that, as I point out in
16 my paper, there should be some consideration of the fact
17 that the tules were not always there, that part of the
18 time they were burned and there wasn't much potential for
19 use of water in consumptive use after they burned.

20 MR. WALSH: Two things, Mr. Dawdy. First of all,
21 you are saying how many tules were there, how many square
22 miles or acres?

23 MR. DAWDY: Well, the estimate in 1868 was some 600
24 to 700 thousand acres.

25 MR. WALSH: And how did they burn?

1 MR. DAWDY: They burned either naturally as the
2 forest fires started this last year, or the Indians burned
3 them down.

4 MR. WALSH: Thank you.

5 MR. DAWDY: As Cronise said in 1868, large areas,
6 and this is pages 10 and 11, large areas of tules dried
7 out each year and burned. "The basins and Delta areas
8 were characterized by giant tules, said to be 10 to 15
9 feet high, so that a man on horseback could not be seen in
10 them. Usually the water drained off the basin lands by
11 mid-summer, and the tules were set on fire causing great
12 clouds of smoke to cover the lower valley."

13 Then a traveler in 1833, a Mr. Zenas Leonard,
14 traveled with the Walker party down the San Joaquin to
15 Suisun Bay from the Merced River. "At this season of the
16 year, which was early November, when the grass in the
17 plain is dry, if a fire should be started, it presents a
18 spectacle truly grand."

19 In October of 1837, Captain Edward Belcher wrote:
20 "The spring tides overflow all the lower lands, which are
21 well stored with long flag grass, and rushes of great
22 size, of which later the natives construct their balsas.
23 During the dry season the natives burn this down, and
24 probably by such means destroy many oak plantations which
25 otherwise would flourish."

1 Brewer also recorded the burning tules. On
2 November 1, 1861, he noted: "The swamps bordering all the
3 rivers, bays or lakes, are covered with a tall brush, ten
4 or twelve feet high, called 'tule,' which drives up where
5 it joins the arable land. On the plain below camp, fire
6 was in the tules and in the stubble grounds at several
7 places every night, and in the night air the site was most
8 grand -- great sheets of flame, extending over acres, now
9 a broad lurid sheet, then a line of fire sweeping across
10 stubble fields. Every evening we would go out and sit on
11 a fence on the ridge and watch this beautiful site, some
12 nights finer than others."

13 So, there was quite a bit of evidence that prior to
14 the advent of settlement of the central valley, that the
15 tules dried and burned regularly. That burning reduced
16 the water demands to that for open ground or even less if
17 the surface were made relatively more impermeable for part
18 of the year by the fire. Then it would be less than open
19 ground, perhaps.

20 The other thing that is of interest is the
21 savannas, not tules, were recorded by many travelers in
22 the central valley.

23 On September 23, 1776, a joint river and land
24 expedition of Spanish explorers started up the river.
25 They missed connections; however, and only the land

1 exploration continued. They missed connections --

2 MR. WALSH: Which river?

3 MR. DAWDY: San Joaquin and Sacramento. They
4 started up the river and one went overland through
5 Livermore and into the river and ran into the San Joaquin
6 and missed the river people, so the land expedition was
7 the one that reported. "As soon as it crossed the
8 mountains through a pass of low hills which facilitated
9 the march, found itself in the plain which is crossed by
10 the large river, the San Joaquin. Seeing that they were
11 much farther up than had been agreed upon, decided to
12 continue through the plain up the river. He did this,
13 following the stream for three entire days, traveling
14 rapidly. The plain through which that river runs, he
15 said, is as level as the palm of the hand, without any
16 trees except in the bed of the river.

17 It is an immense plain, for he did not see the end
18 of it, and he reached a place where it made a horizon in
19 every direction, so that he saw the sun rise and set in
20 the same way as if he were on the high seas.

21 "After traveling much further on the bank of the
22 river, he observed that, although it was very wide, it
23 apparently, did not carry much water, and he wished to try
24 his luck in crossing it, but some heathen, seeing what he
25 was about to do, made signs that he must not cross unless

1 he followed them.

2 He did this, and ascending a little farther, they
3 showed him a ford, and by it he crossed the great river of
4 our Father San Francisco, guided by the heathen." This
5 was the San Joaquin. "On the other side of the river, he
6 found that the same plain and level land continued. They
7 traveled over it all day. To the north in the same plain
8 they saw some groves which, judging by the windings which
9 they made marked the course of the rivers, but they did
10 not dare to explore them less they be lost in that wide
11 plain."

12 Here on this map at A is the stretch of the San
13 Joaquin over which they were traveling and the area here
14 shows as riparian forest is a band of trees on the map
15 which is five miles wide minimum.

16 Now, the Morago expedition of 1808 gave a similar
17 report to the previous expedition. In September of 1808,
18 after about 12 leagues, they left Livermore
19 approximately -- of course, Livermore wasn't there but I
20 mean left the vicinity of Livermore, after about 12
21 leagues, about 33 miles, and my insert there is on page
22 12: "We arrived at the Laguna del Blanco on the banks of
23 the Rio del Pescadero," and this identified by the editor
24 as the west channel of the San Joaquin in its Delta area.
25 "Having crossed a branch of that river, we spent the night

1 safely."

2 Then, on September 27, "Leaving camp where it was
3 pitched yesterday, this morning with four men I continued
4 on toward the east, and after about two leagues, which is
5 about 5.5 miles, I found the river and I followed it south
6 for about four leagues, about 11 miles. No ford could be
7 found in this distance so I returned to camp. In the
8 afternoon I sent the corporal in a northerly direction in
9 search of the ford in the river. He found it, but on the
10 opposite side he was confronted by a very large tular and
11 could not continue."

12 He marched 33 miles, he marched 5-1/2 miles, he
13 marched 11 miles, and finally, he found some huge tules.
14 This is B-1 approximately here (indicating on the map),
15 and this is where searching for the ford and where they
16 were wandering around looking for a way to get across the
17 river.

18 Then, on the 20th of October, 1808, a couple of
19 weeks later: "Today we followed the Merced River
20 downstream, exploring it to a junction with the San
21 Joaquin. The low plains of the river are nitrous to
22 within a distance of two leagues, more or less, before
23 reaching the San Joaquin. From there downstream the plains
24 along the river are good and the soil is rich. There are
25 some beautiful willow groves, but also, there is the

1 disadvantage that one stone can be found. This is all
2 that has been found at the junction of these rivers," and
3 that's B-2 up here.

4 Now, at B-1, Ms. Fox says that this is a tule swamp
5 over the whole route, 33, 11 miles, whatever, and they
6 found them finally up at the ford at their last site
7 mentioned up here in B-1.

8 The B-2, Ms. Fox says this is an area of tules and
9 riparian forest all the way, and yet, they say that they
10 found a few beautiful willow groves.

11 And then, Captain Belcher came along, as was
12 mentioned earlier, and he went up the Sacramento River.
13 "Midshipmen Simpkinson stayed behind on ship while Captain
14 Belcher explored the Sacramento in 1837, but he wrote and
15 said: "Whenever anybody had an opportunity of penetrating
16 the thick, dense barriers of trees and shrubs that line
17 the banks, he arrived upon a vast plain almost without an
18 inequality covered with the richest pasture and
19 interspersed with park-like groups of trees, on which
20 large herds of elk, consisting sometimes of several
21 hundreds, were constantly grazing."

22 "Oaks of a luxuriant growth, beech, walnut and ash,
23 were the principal trees which lined the banks," and note
24 the oaks.

25 On page 13 of my report, Surgeon Richard Brinsley

1 Hinds wrote further of the river trip: "It was late in
2 the autumn of 1837, when an expedition up the Rio
3 Sacramento penetrated from San Francisco some distance
4 into the interior. The county exhibited a vast plain,
5 rich in a deep soil, and subject to periodical submersion.
6 Occasional clumps of fine oaks and planes imparted an
7 appearance of parkland. They were already shedding their
8 leaves. A small grape was very abundant on the banks."

9 Captain Belcher, himself, wrote, and I will skip
10 some of this -- well, maybe I won't -- I am enjoying it.
11 "Having entered the Sacramento, we soon found that it
12 increased in width as we advanced, and at our noon station
13 of the second day was about one-third mile wide. The
14 marsh inland now gave way to firm ground, preserving its
15 level in a most remarkable manner, succeeded by banks well
16 wooded with oak, planes, ash, willow, chestnut, walnut,
17 poplar and brushwood. On the 30th of October, at about
18 four p.m., I landed at 'the fork,' which ws named Point
19 Victoria." That is the forks of the Feather and the
20 Sacramento, at point C up here. That's where the Feather
21 comes into the Sacramento.

22 "Throughout the whole extent," from Elk Station to
23 the Sacramento mouth, the country is one immense flat.
24 Our course lay between banks, varying from 20 to 30 feet
25 above the river level."

1 MR. WALSH: Why wasn't the first major fork the
2 American River?

3 MR. DAWDY: He identified it by a location as being
4 the fork of the Feather. It didn't say the first fork.
5 It was the Elk Fork.

6 MR. WALSH: Okay.

7 MR. DAWDY: He named it the Elk Fork.

8 "Our course lay between the bank, varying from 20
9 to 30 feet above the river level." That's rather
10 important because if the trees are 20 or 30 feet up, they
11 have got a way to go to get the water. "... apparently,
12 from its strata of differently composed clay and loose
13 earth, produced by some great alluvial deposit. These
14 were, for the most part, belted with willow, ash, oak or
15 plane, which latter of immense size overhung the stream."

16 "Within, and at the verge of the banks, oaks of
17 immense size were plentiful. These appeared to form a
18 band on each side, about 300 yards in depth, and within
19 (on the immense park-like extent, which we generally
20 explored when landing for positions) they were to be seen
21 in clumps, which served to relieve the eye, wandering over
22 what might otherwise be described as one level plain or
23 sea of grass.

24 Q During the rainy season, which commences about the
25 middle of November and terminates about the end of

1 Feburary, the river is said to overflow its banks, when
2 its impetuosity is such that navigation is then
3 impossible. The annual rains do not, however, of
4 necessity inundate these lowlands, but in severe seasons,
5 after heavy falls of snow, they produce one immense sea,
6 leaving only the few scattered eminences which art or
7 nature have produced, as so many islets or spots of
8 refuge."

9 Now, Ms. Fox says that this is tules and rain
10 forest all the way.

11 The Russian, Admiral Otto von Kotzebue, ventured up
12 the Sacramento as far as the fork with the Feather River
13 in 1824. He wrote of his trip: "The weather was
14 favorable and we set out working our way between the
15 islands into the northern portion of the bay. We reached
16 toward noon, at a distance of 30 miles from our ship, the
17 common mouth known as the Carquinez "which he considered
18 the mouth of the rivers.

19 "When we had proceeded 18 miles from our night camp
20 and 23 from the river's mouth, we reached the confluence
21 of the two streams (Sacramento and San Joaquin). One
22 flows from the east and the other from the north. Since
23 the River Pescadores (San Joaquin) was already known, I
24 chose the other, which flows from the north, and is called
25 Sacramento. Towards noon, after we had ascended it some

1 miles, a violent contrary wind forced us ashore." This is
2 about mile 38 and this is on page 14 of my report.

3 "We were obliged to give up for this day, pitched
4 our tents in a pleasant meadow on the west side of the
5 river. I then climbed a hill to enjoy a more extensive
6 prospect; and observed that the country to the west
7 swelled into hills of a moderate height, besprinkled with
8 trees growing singly. In the east and southeast, the
9 horizon was bounded by icy mountains. The distance of
10 these mountains from my present station could not be less
11 than 40 miles. Between them and the river, the country is
12 low, flat, thickly wooded and crossed by an infinite
13 number of streams, which divide the whole of it into
14 islands.

15 "All along the banks of the river grapes grow wild
16 in as much profusion as the rankest weeds." That is point
17 C up here at the forks of the Feather.

18 "Early the next morning we prepared for our return,
19 and soon quitted these lovely and fertile plains, where
20 many thousand families might live in plenty and comfort."

21 Now, this is a mixture of riparian forest and grass
22 plains, whereas Ms Fox saw tules.

23 I'm not sure that Admiral von Kotzebue got all the
24 way up to -- yes, he went up to the forks of the Feather
25 also.

1 William Dane Phelps traveled up the Sacramento in
2 1841 to visit Captain Sutter, who had established his fort
3 at Sacramento in 1840. On 27 July --

4 MR. MAUGHAN: Excuse me, do you have several more
5 that you are going to read?

6 MR. DAWDY: Yes, several more and then I am
7 through.

8 MR. MAUGHAN: If they are similar to what the
9 others said, if you can once again --

10 MR. DAWDY: I will skip over to one last compelling
11 one, but let me assure you that they are over and over
12 from the historical sources, similar, but there is one
13 compelling one at the end.

14 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. The whole thing will go
15 into the record.

16 MR. DAWDY: Yes, I realize that.

17 Let me read this. It is really a neat one.

18 There was a guy by the name of Bryant who came
19 overland to California. He traveled overland along the
20 route I marked E, down one of the overflow basins and he
21 described it. He looked for a tree to get some shade and
22 he found no tules.

23 On page 18 Bryant continues: "On September 13, we
24 commenced today our journey from New Helvetia to San
25 Francisco," and this is F-1 and then F-2 along in here.

1 "We traveled in a south course over a flat plain and
2 encamped on a small lake near the Cosumnes River. The
3 stream is small but the bottom lands are extensive and
4 rich. The grass on the upland plain over which we have
5 traveled is brown and crisp from the annual drought. In
6 the low bottom it is still green.

7 "September 14, we crossed the Cosumnes River and
8 traveled over a level plain covered with luxuriant grass
9 and timbered with the evergreen oak until three o'clock,
10 when we crossed the Mokelumne River and encamped on its
11 southern bank in a beautiful grove of live oaks. The soil
12 of the bottom appears to be very rich and produces the
13 finest qualities of grasses. The grass on the upland is
14 also abundant, but at this time it is brown and dead."

15 Ms. Fox shows riparian forest about five miles wide
16 of the Cosumnes and ten miles wide at the Mokelumne.

17 The last trip that I will --

18 MR. SAMANIEGO: What is the approximate distance
19 between the Cosumnes and the Mokelumne?

20 MR. DAWDY: How long the distance is here -- who
21 asked the question?

22 MR. SAMANIEGO: I did, up here.

23 MR. DAWDY: Between the Cosumnes and Mokelumne, I
24 don't think he mentions the distance. He walked it,
25 however.

1 MR. SAMANIEGO: He walked it in one afternoon?

2 MR. DAWDY: He traveled it.

3 MR. SAMANIEGO: Would you read that passage again?

4 Does it say in the afternoon?

5 MR. DAWDY: On September 13 they camped. On
6 September 14 they crossed the Cosumnes and traveled over a
7 level plain until three o'clock when they reached the
8 Mokelumne River .

9 MR. SAMANIEGO: From perhaps in the morning until
10 three o'clock in the afternoon.

11 MR. DAWDY: Yes. I don't know if he was actually
12 walking or on horseback.

13 MR. SAMANIEGO: It's a reasonable horseback ride.

14 MR. DAWDY: I would assume so since the gentleman
15 did it.

16 MR. SAMANIEGO: I wanted to know if it is credible.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: And all seriousness, I think it must
18 be in the order of 20 or 30 miles.

19 MR. DAWDY: I marched 20 miles with a full
20 fieldpack and rifle, and after you have marched across the
21 country as he had done, I imagine he could do 20 miles
22 with a full fieldpack and rifle, too. So I think it is
23 reasonable. I think the gentleman was an experienced
24 traveler. He had traveled all the way across the country.

25 "September 15, our route has continued over a flat

1 plain, generally covered with luxuriant grass, wild oats
2 and a variety of sparkling flowers. The ford of the San
3 Joaquin is about 40 or 50 miles from its mouth. At this
4 season the water is at its lowest stage."

5 All right, we know now.

6 "The stream at the ford is probably 100 yards in
7 breadth and our animals crossed it without much difficulty
8 (they were on horseback), the water reaching about midway
9 of their bodies. Oak and small willows are the principal
10 growth of wood skirting the river.

11 "Entering upon the broad plain we passed, in about
12 three miles, a small alkali lake. The grass is brown and
13 crisp, but the seed upon it is evidence that it had fully
14 matured before the drought affected it. We passed during
15 the afternoon several tule marshes, with which the plain
16 of San Joaquin is dotted."

17 This happens to be F-3. He is crossing in the
18 depth of the South Delta which is shown as continuous tule
19 marsh on the map of Ms. Fox. "We passed during the
20 afternoon several tule marshes, with which the plain of
21 the San Joaquin is dotted. At a distance, the tule of
22 these marshes presents the appearance of immense fields of
23 ripened corn."

24 So, for distances, there were no tules.

25 "The marshes are now nearly dry, and to shorten our

1 journey we crossed several of them without difficulty. A
2 month earlier, this would not have been practicable.
3 While pursuing our journey we frequently saw large droves
4 of wild horses and elk grazing quietly upon the plain."

5 And then, Mr. Bryant visited with Dr. Marsh over
6 south of Antioch, near Brentwood and he went up and looked
7 out over the Delta and he described it in much the same
8 way that you heard here. F-4 is the old stone house there
9 at Brentwood which still exists, but you can't get to it
10 now. It's falling down.

11 And in closing, I want to say that there are many
12 instances of early explorers and visitors noting the
13 occurrence of freshwater in Suisun Bay. This would be
14 evidence of considerable flow from the Sacramento and San
15 Joaquin Rivers into the San Francisco Bay at the time of
16 observation. Observations such as these, particularly in
17 late August, September or October, would eliminate the
18 no-flow into the bay, and the times in particular that I
19 found were March 20, 1772, as described by Father Juan
20 Crespi and Captain Don Pedro Fages; September 17, 1775,
21 Captain Juan Manuel Ayala, accompanied by Father Vicente
22 Santa Maria; in April of 1776, Father Pedro Font and Juan
23 Bautista de Anza; and in November, 1837, Captain Belcher;
24 and in late October, 1846, Bryant.

25 So, through the period from 1772 to 1846, there

1 were reportings of the sweetness and freshness of the
2 water at the upstream end of the Suisun Bay where the
3 Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers emptied into the San
4 Francisco Bay system.

5 And that is essentially the points I want to make
6 in my testimony. Thank you.

7 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, Mr. Dawdy .

8 Cross-examine. Mr. Littleworth. Anyone else? All
9 right, sir, you may come up.

10 MR. DAWDY: Incidentally, I meant to pass this out.
11 I do have copies of that figure here.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: All right.

13 CROSS-EXAMINATION

14 by MR. LITTLEWORTH:

15 Q Well, Mr. Dawdy, we are both amateur historians. I
16 have a Master's Degree in History, too.

17 A Well, I am more -- well, not necessarily amateur,
18 because I am a member of the historical organization that
19 is involved with public history as they call it.

20 Q Let me begin with just a minor point that I thought
21 you said when you were talking about the Morago expedition
22 and the sergeant who was sent out to try to find a way to
23 ford the river, page 12, that he came to very large tular
24 but he had to go some 30 miles before he found some tules.

25 Did I understand you to say that?

1 A He had marched, that was the distance that he
2 marched in different directions, and I was converting
3 leagues into miles.

4 Q Tular is an area where tules are found; is it not?

5 A Yes, that's what I say, he found on the opposite
6 bank there were tules there.

7 Q He did find large areas of tules?

8 A Yes, sir.

9 Q And a little further down in your same quote, he is
10 out the next day and finally can't get to the American
11 River, he is blocked by tule marshes?

12 A That is correct.

13 Q Mr. Dawdy, I take it that you were talking about
14 flow under natural conditions. Would you agree that we
15 should be looking at the period of time probably from the
16 late 1700s where the early Spanish explorers were
17 recording their travels maybe into the early 1800s;
18 certainly, we would not want to go into the period of
19 actual white settlement; would we?

20 A We wouldn't want to go into the period from the
21 Gold Rush on, I would guess.

22 Q That's what I would think. The Gold Rush
23 dramatically changed the hydrologic conditions in the
24 state; didn't it?

25 A Yes.

1 Q And I think you agreed that under natural
2 conditions there were these large natural floodplains that
3 ran generally parallel to the Sacramento and the San
4 Joaquin Rivers?

5 A Yes, sir.

6 Q I think in the State Water Contractors' exhibit we
7 indicated that those flood basins had about 2 million
8 acres that were tributary to the Delta. Would you think
9 that's about right?

10 A I don't think I checked that figure.

11 Q You really don't know that one way or the other?

12 A No.

13 Q You do agree that there were large areas of tules
14 that existed in those flood basins?

15 A In some of those flood basins, particularly in the
16 Yolo basin, there was an area of tules in 1868.

17 Q You also agree that there were large areas of
18 riparian forests under natural conditions?

19 A There were areas of trees reported by the
20 travelers, yes. Not being too picky, but the large areas
21 is your definition. I was merely quoting the travelers.

22 Q I thought you were putting some emphasis on all the
23 trees that people saw.

24 A In some cases, I was also stressing the narrowness
25 of the width, you might note; therefore, the large areas

1 is your interpretation. All I was doing was reading what
2 the travelers said.

3 Q Dr. Fox indicated that there were approximately 1.4
4 million acres of riparian forests, trees along the streams
5 under natural conditions. Do you have any reason to
6 disagree with that figure?

7 A Yes, based on the travelers' accounts, I think that
8 there's some evidence that some of those numbers are
9 somewhat larger than --

10 Q So, from what you were reading us, you were making
11 that determination as to acreage?

12 A Not as to acreage, but there's also other estimates
13 of riparian forest that are available.

14 Q Going back to tules for a second, I think in your
15 work, in your own Exhibit 3, you have described sources
16 which state them as being giants, up to 15 feet high, of
17 enormous height. You recognize those quotes; do you?

18 A Some of them I quoted, 12 to 15 feet high.

19 Q And some straight 15 feet high in your own work?

20 A Could be.

21 Q And also, the word "giant" and "enormous"?

22 A Well, large tules, yes.

23 Q I am now quoting out of your Exhibit 3.

24 A I was quoting the travelers and that's what they
25 said, yes.

1 Q That's what you understand from the quotations in
2 which they described them and the way I have just done?

3 A Yes, there were some descriptions like that.

4 Q It is true; is it not that tules standing up to 15
5 feet high would have a greater consumptive use than tules
6 maybe 5 or 6 feet high?

7 A I did not see any evidence of that in any of the
8 papers that I reviewed.

9 Q Do you think that the size of the plant doesn't
10 make any difference as to how much water it uses?

11 A It depends upon the volume density, yes.

12 Q Taking a six-foot tule versus a fifteen-foot tule
13 under the same conditions, do you think they would use the
14 same amount of water?

15 A I am not positive. I would have to see the
16 evidence on that.

17 Q Now, as I understand it, you reviewed Dr. Fox's
18 work and concluded that she overestimated the annual
19 consumptive use of tule marshes and, hence, underestimated
20 what would be the natural flow into the bay; is that
21 correct?

22 A May I say that that was not in my paper that was
23 presented in evidence.

24 Q Well, isn't that what you were trying to do with
25 your paper, to indicate that because she had overestimated

1 the consumptive use, she had in turn underestimated the
2 natural flow into the bay?

3 A That's my opinion, yes.

4 Q That was the purpose of your exhibit; wasn't it?

5 A The purpose of my exhibit was to see what the
6 travelers said about historical conditions when we started
7 looking at some of those points that were raised.

8 Q Now, you take the view; do you, that she
9 overestimated the actual number of acres that were
10 involved in tule marshes?

11 A I think that's correct, yes.

12 Q And you know that she finally used in her exhibit,
13 946,000 acres. You mentioned that figure; didn't you?

14 Well, never mind, you don't need to go back and
15 take the time to look that up. That's in the evidence.
16 In any event, you are estimating between six and seven
17 hundred thousand acres of tule marshland; is that right?

18 A That is correct.

19 Q And that's based on the book by Titus F. Cronise,
20 entitled "The Natural Wealth of California in 1986"?

21 A That is right.

22 Q He estimated the conditions, the amount of tules in
23 1886; did he not?

24 A That is correct.

25 Q So, that was not what they were under natural

1 conditions but what he estimated they were in 1868; isn't
2 that correct?

3 A That is correct.

4 Q Cronise didn't do his work as part of any
5 government survey; did he?

6 A No, he did not.

7 Q And it wasn't part of any scholarly journal or any
8 academic work; was it?

9 A No, not exactly.

10 Q It was sort of a popular book; wasn't it?

11 A He was an individual who was a native of the state
12 and who was reporting upon the conditions in the state at
13 that time.

14 Q He was a farmer in the San Joaquin valley; wasn't
15 he?

16 A That, I don't know.

17 Q He wrote what was really a popular book to sort of
18 encourage immigrants to the state?

19 A Probably so, but he wrote a book about California
20 as of that time. As to his purpose now, you may be a
21 better psychologist than I and can read minds better, but
22 I am not sure exactly why he wrote it.

23 Q You indicated in the chart that was up there that
24 this was a county-by-county listing of the tule acreage
25 from which Cronise came to his six to seven hundred

1 thousand acre-feet figure. I think you were in the
2 audience when Dr. Fox testified and indicated that he had
3 omitted the acreage in Sutter County.

4 Do you recall that?

5 A I recall that.

6 Q Do you agree that there were tule marshes in Sutter
7 County?

8 A There was an area which was mentioned in my report
9 of the Sutter basin that probably did not drain according
10 to the map.

11 Q So, he probably was underestimating then by leaving
12 out Sutter basin?

13 A But probably overestimating in some other cases,
14 yes.

15 Q Are you aware of the report of the California
16 Surveyor General in 1856 that also listed the tule acreage
17 by counties which reported 160,000 acres of tules in
18 Sutter County?

19 A No.

20 Q Are you aware of a report by Mr. Hilgard, who I
21 think was the first head of the agricultural experiment
22 station at the University of California written in 1883,
23 where he indicated that there were 339,000 acres of tule
24 marshes in Sutter County?

25 A No, I am not aware of that.

1 Q Are you aware of Mr. Hilgard's conclusion that
2 there were 1.178 million acres of tule marshes that were
3 tributary to the Delta?

4 A What year was that?

5 Q Well, in a natural state.

6 A That was not a natural state. You said the natural
7 state was before --

8 Q I said this was when the work was written.

9 A Yes.

10 Q You are not aware anyway of Dr. Hilgard's report?

11 A No.

12 Q All right. Are you aware that your friend, Mr.
13 Cronise, wrote a second book two years later?

14 A I was aware, the reference of which I couldn't
15 find.

16 Q That was entitled, I think, "Agriculture and Other
17 Resources in California, 1870." Are you aware that in
18 that report he talks about there being several million
19 acres of swamp and overflow lands generally designated as
20 tule in California?

21 A May I speak to that point --

22 Q Yes, you may.

23 A Swamp and overflow came out of the Arkansas Act,
24 and it was a legal term, and in Arkansas if it was a swamp
25 and overflow land, it was declared that you could settle

1 it for a small price. There was a story of the definition
2 of swamp and overflow land, that if you could pass a boat
3 over it, you could claim it, and so there was a farmer --
4 a land speculator, I should say -- hitched up a team of
5 horses to a boat and went around a large area, and then
6 went into court and won, that this was swamp and overflow
7 land.

8 Swamp and overflow land was all these basins which
9 were periodically inundated, but not necessarily areas
10 which were tule lands.

11 Q Are you aware that the Arkansas Act of 1850
12 authorized the conveyance of swamp and overflow land to
13 the state on condition that they be reclaimed?

14 A Yes.

15 Q And the title was inchoate and dependent upon
16 actual identification of those lands, and a survey and a
17 plot, and then, a final patent?

18 A And a lot of fraud.

19 Q But all of the conditions that I just mentioned?

20 A Yes.

21 Q And the character of the land was actually to be
22 determined as of the date of the act which was September
23 28, 1850; wasn't it?

24 A That, I don't know.

25 Q You are not aware that they made fall measurements

1 so they were determining what qualified under the act
2 under fall conditions?

3 A No.

4 Q Are you aware that the definition of swamp and
5 overflow land was, and I am quoting: Land that was wet
6 and unfit for cultivation?

7 A That was land that was periodically overflowed,
8 yes.

9 Q That is not what I asked you. I meant -- I asked
10 whether you understood that the definition was, and I am
11 quoting: Land that was wet and unfit for cultivation, and
12 I am closing the quote.

13 A No, I was not aware of that. I was not aware of
14 the legal definition of swamp and overflow land.

15 Q Are you aware that after that act the state and
16 federal governments began to survey the swamp lands and to
17 map them?

18 A With horses; yes, I am aware that there was a lot
19 of problems with the definition of those lands. There was
20 a lot of fraud involved and there was a lot of revisions
21 of the terms of that act.

22 My understanding of the legal implications of all
23 this is not all that great because I am not a lawyer, but
24 there were many stories about how the Arkansas Act led to
25 a good deal of problems.

1 Q Are you aware that the Surveyor General in
2 California in 1852, in his annual report, reported 2.6
3 million acres of land under the Arkansas Act, swamp land
4 and overflow land?

5 A I have seen that, not that number but I have seen a
6 large number county by county.

7 Q I want to read to you an in-house memorandum dated
8 September 27, 1985, to the Deputy Regional Director of the
9 Fish and Wildlife Service regarding loss of central valley
10 wetlands. There are two quotes I would like to read to
11 you.

12 "In the Sacramento valley the wetlands exceeded one
13 million acres. Bordering the two major rivers are natural
14 levees. Breaks in these levees allowed flows to enter
15 basins like (Butte, Sutter, Colusa, et cetera,) side
16 channels and stream meander supporting tules and other
17 wetland vegetation."

18 Over on the next page, "A portion of these vast
19 wetlands frequently called 'tule lands,' was owned by the
20 United States. With the passage of the Arkansas Act in
21 1850, the tule land, now identified as swamp and overflow
22 lands, were released to the State of California. An
23 estimated 1.7 million acres of swamp and overflow lands
24 located in the valley were put up for sale."

25 Do you have any reason to disagree with this fact

1 in this memorandum?

2 A I don't necessarily disagree with the fact, but I
3 would say one has to interpret what swamp and overland
4 acres meant.

5 Q Although this letter equated them with tule lands;
6 didn't he?

7 A He equated them with swamp and overflow lands.

8 Q Well, I think the quote reads: "With the passage
9 of the Arkansas Act in 1850, the 'tule lands' now
10 identified as swamp and overflow lands, so he equated the
11 two terms; didn't he?

12 A Yes.

13 Q Are you aware that there was a map in 1857 by
14 Mandeville as part of the U.S. Swamp Land Surveys pursuant
15 to the Arkansas Act, and I wonder if you are, if you have
16 looked at that map?

17 A I have not looked at that map. I have limited
18 resources to do this.

19 Q Did you look at any of the California reports of
20 the swamp land surveys that were made between 1850 and
21 1929 on lands that were swamps and had tules?

22 A No.

23 Q Did you look at the map prepared as part of the
24 Board of Commissioners on irrigation established by the
25 War Department in 1874, and a map that accompanied that

1 which again dealt with the swamp lands?

2 A No.

3 Q Did you look at a California Geological Survey map
4 by Whitney in 1874 on the tule marsh lands?

5 A No.

6 Q Did you look at the first maps prepared by William
7 Ham Hall, the State Engineer in 1880, 1887 and 1888, where
8 he mapped out the tule marsh land?

9 A No.

10 Q Did you look at the map which accompanied the 1883
11 Hilgard report which maps tule marshes?

12 A No.

13 Q Did you look at the Cushler map which was prepared
14 more recently which was the one that Dr. Fox finally
15 planimetered or took her final measurements from, which
16 was a natural vegetation map?

17 A Yes, I think I have seen that.

18 Q Did you planimeter the tule marsh areas shown on
19 that map?

20 A No, I did not.

21 Q You are aware that map has been included recently
22 in the California Water Atlas, 1979, on page 17?

23 A Yes, some of those areas noted as tule swamps is
24 where the travelers traveled across without seeing tules.
25 I noted that, also.

1 Q You also know that Dr. Fox adjusted the acreage
2 downward from that map?

3 A She didn't adjust it downward enough, according to
4 the travelers' reports that I quoted.

5 Q It would be a little hard to determine acreage by
6 travelers' reports; wouldn't it?

7 A I am not quite so sure if it is noted as 300 yards
8 wide that it is difficult to compute mileage by 300 yards.
9 You don't have to planimeter that. And if you have it
10 five miles wide or ten miles wide, then I would think that
11 you would tend to overestimate acreage.

12 Q Mr. Dawdy, are you aware that in 1884, Mr. Manson,
13 who was William Ham Hall's assistant, was engaged in
14 mapping the lands of the state entirely apart from the
15 Arkansas Act?

16 A No.

17 Q You then haven't seen his report in which he
18 discusses simply swamp land and says the aggregate area of
19 these bodies of lands is over one million acres?

20 A No.

21 Q Mr. Dawdy, I take it that it is your claim that
22 these natural flood basins actually drain fairly rapidly,
23 and therefore, the tules were dormant a good part of the
24 year?

25 A No, I didn't say very rapidly.

1 Q Are there some then that maintain water all year
2 around?

3 A There were some that drained. They drained slowly
4 as the capacity of the channel could take the water, but
5 they weren't necessarily full of tules either. People who
6 traveled through some of these basins mentioned the fact
7 that they had obviously been wet and there were a lot of
8 hoof marks, but they also mentioned grass. They didn't
9 mention tules.

10 Q Well, it is not your claim then that the marshes
11 drained and so the tules basically dried out and didn't
12 use water all year around?

13 A I think that the tules in many of these basins --
14 well, the basins drained and what tules were there, many
15 of them at the edge of the sloughs went dormant, and
16 obviously, some of them burned.

17 Q I think there is some indication in your Exhibit 3
18 that some of the marshes had water in them all the year
19 around; isn't that true?

20 A I didn't say that, I don't think.

21 Q You report travelers that did; don't you? Take a
22 look at page 6 of your report where you say the Sutter
23 basin didn't drain until under natural conditions; is that
24 correct?

25 A Yes, that is correct.

1 Q And you can take a look at page 9 from Cronise. He
2 talks about 200,000 acres in San Joaquin County covered at
3 all times by a few inches of water?

4 A That is probably part of the area that they walked
5 across and found that there were some tule marshes that
6 they could walk through, but most of it was grass and dry.

7 Q If the marshes were really draining and the tules
8 were drying out and not using the water, then I take it,
9 we should not have historical accounts of them in the late
10 fall; should we, or at least if they are they should be
11 counted as dead?

12 A No, that doesn't necessarily follow.

13 Q You mean tules could be alive in the fall and not
14 have water?

15 A If the water is up to the roots they can be alive
16 with water one, two and three feet down. They go dormant
17 and they use less water. They may go dormant and would
18 use perhaps less water, but they wouldn't die. I don't
19 think anywhere I said the tules died necessarily.

20 Q You are not taking the position then that under
21 natural conditions we did not find very large areas of
22 tules in the fall, you are agreeing that we did find them?

23 A Yes, it's a matter of the number of acres that we
24 are discussing. A few hundred thousand acres makes a
25 difference.

1 Q You were reading from some historical accounts. I
2 want to call your attention to Father Ayala. Did you look
3 at that expedition?

4 A I think that's one I mentioned.

5 Q That was in the October trip; wasn't it?

6 A I think they went up just to -- how far up the
7 river did they go?

8 Q Well, he has entitled his diary "Exploration of the
9 Eastern Shores of the Upper San Francisco Bay, San Pablo
10 and Suisun Bays, and of the lower Sacramento and San
11 Joaquin Rivers."

12 A Yes, if I remember correctly, he did not go up the
13 river particularly, but that's only my memory.

14 Q Let me read you a couple of quotes from him:

15 "October 17. There are various islands covered with tule
16 rushes and thickets. At 14 leagues the rivers begin to
17 form with tules on the banks. It is sheer swamp which
18 prevents any landing on firm ground. On the 18th day,
19 everything is tule swamp on each side with an occasional
20 bush. On the 19th day, the river keeps on in the same with
21 its windings covered with tules."

22 A little farther down the same day, "There were
23 ponds and tule swamps."

24 "The 21st day: We journeyed about three or four
25 leagues and stopped at a high spot which had a number of

1 oak trees but was entirely surrounded by tule swamps."

2 "Twenty-second day: All the tule swamps is
3 impassable." Still on the 22nd day: "The bank of the
4 river still has some oak trees, but from here down where
5 the tule swamps begin again."

6 "Twenty-fourth day: The previous night we slept in
7 the tule swamp and the water reached our blankets at the
8 turn of the tide. The whole area is this way for several
9 leagues."

10 You didn't find anything in your historical account
11 which contradicts this; did you?

12 A In fact, I quoted some things. In particular, he
13 traveled up the San Joaquin probably, I would guess, and
14 the San Joaquin, if you remember, I reported not only on
15 the tules, but on the mosquitos and that they reported
16 almost up to Stockton that there were tules on both sides
17 and it was very boring.

18 The same gentleman who reported going over that
19 same route you were just quoting at great length, who
20 quoted all those tules, subsequently went up the
21 Sacramento and came down from Sacramento to San Francisco,
22 and agreed pretty well with other travelers, that it was
23 not tules, it was more delightful than the trip to
24 Stockton on the San Joaquin.

25 MR. LITTLEWORTH: Mr. Chairman, let me ask a

1 question here. I have historical accounts at no end and I
2 don't know whether it is worth my going through it if you
3 maybe would take my representation that I can read from
4 Spanish diaries showing travelers were seeing tules, and I
5 can do it for a good deal of the rest of the evening, if
6 one wanted to.

7 MR. MAUGHAN: No, thank you. Can you give a list
8 of the references?

9 MR. LITTLEWORTH: Yes, we are going to put that in
10 a rebuttal exhibit and maybe this is the way to handle it.
11 I think every historical source that's ever been listed is
12 listed with the quotations and so forth, and there are
13 pages and pages and pages, and I think that's the best way
14 to handle it.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: That would be much better at this
16 stage because some time ago I just felt you might each
17 find a few quotes that might give a little different
18 viewpoint because travelers went different routes.

19 MR. LITTLEWORTH: We are actually relying primarily
20 on all of the surveys and maps and so forth. That's where
21 we really rely, but there are no end of accounts and they
22 are in our rebuttal exhibits. I will do it that way.

23 MR. DAWDY: I would say, Mr. Chairman, that there
24 is not no end in mine because I have limited resources but
25 that I quoted mine, mapped them, showed where they were in

1 relation to what was shown on that map, and so, I would
2 feel, I would hope that you would do likewise, where you
3 don't show tules you would show where the person was. It
4 would help to identify some areas that are not what you
5 say or what I say.

6 MR. MAUGHAN: Let me just say it, and I understand
7 what you are saying, and to the degree the State
8 Contractors ought to do that, I do realize we have
9 different resources behind some of this kind of research,
10 so I think all the Board members and the staff do, so that
11 is something that is known.

12 MR. LITTLEWORTH: Q Mr. Dawdy, I want to just
13 touch one other point and maybe I can end this more
14 quickly if we are going to rely on the rebuttal witnesses.

15 MR. DAWDY: Mr. Chairman, it would have saved more
16 time if you had done such a thing knowing the basis for
17 your original exhibits because then we could have seen our
18 areas of agreement and disagreement.

19 Q Well, Mr. Dawdy, I have the Cushler map right, if
20 you want to get into it, but I think we left it with the
21 rebuttal exhibits. I have the big map, though, if you
22 want to take a look at it afterwards. You might be sort
23 of interested.

24 A Not right now anyway.

25 Q I wanted to ask you just a couple of questions

1 about the burning. It is your thought that burning by the
2 Indians was very extensive?

3 A Yes.

4 Q I want to quote you a paper which we obtained from
5 the Forestry Laboratory at the University of California at
6 Berkeley called, "The Influence of Fire on California's
7 Pristine Vegetation," a consideration of control burning,
8 by Burcham. One paragraph reads as follows: "The records
9 reviewed above agree with many others studied. They
10 indicate some burning was done by Indians in Grasslands,
11 but there is very little evidence of Indian fires in
12 forests until an appreciably later time. While it can be
13 established with relative ease that Indians at times burn
14 vegetation, there are many indications that the frequency
15 and extent of their burning was limited."

16 Then, over on the next page, "No evidence has been
17 found to indicate more than very infrequent use of fire
18 for hunting in brushy and forested lands. It appears
19 highly improbable that the California Indians essentially
20 lacking in manpower and physical facilities would attempt
21 to purposely burn any but small tracts of land in which
22 they were particularly interested on a systematic basis."

23 MR. WALSH: Where did that paper come from?

24 MR. LITTLEWORTH: It is a paper written in 1960 out
25 of the Forest Laboratory at the University of California

1 at Berkeley.

2 Q Do you disagree with that quote?

3 A I agree that there are anthropologists who have
4 opposite views of that.

5 Q You indicated that the burning occurred only as
6 naturally caused or by Indians. Are not aware that much
7 of the burning occurred after the reclamation began as a
8 way to actually reclaim the tule land?

9 A Well, yes, but we sort of agreed we are looking at
10 it from an historical context before the Gold Rush.
11 That's the way I spoke to that.

12 Q What about hunting? You agree some of the burning
13 occurred in order to flush game out of the marshes?

14 A Perhaps. I am not discussing from 1850 on.

15 Q So what you are talking about then is burning by
16 the Indians themselves or just from natural causes?

17 A Yes.

18 Q Indians actually used the tules; didn't they, for
19 all kinds of purposes?

20 A Yes.

21 Q It seems rather unlikely they would burn down their
22 source of fuel -- they used them for houses, boats, they
23 made clothing out of them.

24 A They also burned them down so they could see the
25 fields so the enemies couldn't creep up on them because

1 they lived in the tules. They burned them down so that
2 they could easily move about.

3 Q They burned them down so they could be exposed to
4 their enemies?

5 A No, so they would not have their enemies creep up
6 upon them.

7 So what I am saying is perhaps we can do a little
8 job in comparative anthropology, but we don't know why --
9 well, we know the Indians burned. As to what their
10 particular purpose was and how they felt about the
11 different objectives that you are talking about, of
12 course, is an argument among anthropologists.

13 Q We have no idea how much land was really burned; do
14 we?

15 A No, we don't know how much land was burned.

16 MR. LITTLEWORTH: I think those are all the
17 questions we have.

18 MS. LEIDIGH: Staff has no questions.

19 MR. MAUGHAN: Do Board members have any
20 questions -- Board members have no questions.

21 You did have several exhibits. Could you repeat
22 what they are?

23 MR. DAWDY: Exhibits 1, 2 and 3 have been handed in
24 earlier. Exhibit 4 is my picture of the map with the
25 location of the travelers upon it.

1 but to schedule after that for the 29th of December along
2 with some other cross-examination.

3 I know that's a bad day.

4 Tom, we have long noticed that we are starting our
5 program of implementation testimony and so, we just can't
6 encroach upon that.

7 Now, if somebody wants to say here with me and
8 Alice can stand it, and the people who want to
9 cross-examine would be willing to stay, I will stay as
10 long as you want tonight and go through it. Otherwise, we
11 will definitely go through Mr. Somach after the break.
12 You tell me if you desperately want to stay here later
13 tonight and we will see what we can do to get that over.
14 Otherwise, it will be carried over to the 29th.

15 We will take a 10-minute break now.

16 (Recess)

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 9, 1987, 5:20 P.M.

2 ---o0o---

3 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, Mr. Somach.

4 MR. SOMACH: By way of opening statement, I would
5 like to describe the purpose of the testimony so that we
6 can move through it as quickly as possible.

7 During the hydrology topic or hearing --

8 MR. MAUGHAN: Excuse me, just for everybody's
9 information, there are going to be two witnesses tonight
10 from what I have had people come up.

11 Mr. Whitridge has somebody that's related, but the
12 rest of them have agreed to hold their witnesses over
13 until the 29th. I'm sorry.

14 All right, Mr. Somach.

15 MR. SOMACH: Well, the testimony that South Delta,
16 I assume will deal with is the same as what we are dealing
17 with and that's the presentation by the State Water
18 Resources Control Board consultants with respect to
19 testimony regarding hydrology.

20 In particular, the focus of our testimony will be a
21 model with respect to bay salinity, the BAYSAL model,
22 which was presented by board consultants which I believe
23 was, in fact, I know was State Water Resources Control
24 Board Exhibit No. 10, or least the results were reported
25 in that exhibit.

1 This model purports to predict salinity and
2 presumably the reason that it is being introduced is so
3 that it will be used to predict salinity in the context of
4 establishing standards, salinity-related standards.

5 The question then is, can the exhibit be used for
6 that purpose? Can the model develop the use for that
7 purpose?

8 The Central Valley Project Water Association
9 consultant, Dr. Blumberg, says no and that's what his
10 testimony is about, to explain why he says no.

11 ALAN BLUMBERG,
12 having been sworn, testified as follows:

13 DIRECT EXAMINATION
14 by MR. SOMACH:

15 Q For the record, Dr. Blumberg, could you spell your
16 name?

17 A My last name is B-l-u-m-b-e-r-g.

18 Q Was Central Valley Project Water Association
19 Exhibit 42 prepared under your supervision and direction?

20 A Yes, it was.

21 Q Okay. And I might add, I have given board staff 48
22 copies. I have provided a copy and these are packages
23 which include Exhibits 42, 43, and Exhibit 43 has many
24 sub-pages to it, and Exhibit 44. I believe I have also
25 distributed copies to those in attendance here.

1 Now, Exhibit 42, which you have indicated was
2 prepared under your supervision and direction, is a
3 summary of your qualifications; is it not?

4 A Yes, it is.

5 Q And it is an accurate summary?

6 A Yes, it is.

7 Q Can you briefly summarize your qualifications with
8 respect to the testimony that you are going to give here
9 today?

10 A Beginning with the research I did for my Ph.D.
11 dissertation, I have been involved in estuarine and coastal
12 ocean hydro dynamic circulation modeling. For the 12
13 years since I received my degree, I have been at the
14 forefront in the development of the state of the art in
15 three dimensional circulation models, and also, have
16 developed and applied one dimensional and two dimensional
17 models.

18 My work is well documented in the scientific
19 literature. I have approximately 35 journal articles and
20 a similar number of technical reports.

21 Q Have you read the direct examination, the
22 transcript of the direct examination and the
23 cross-examination of Dr. Gartrell with respect to Exhibit
24 10 that took place in July?

25 A Yes, I have.

1 third dimension.

2 Q In your opinion, can the model described in Exhibit
3 10 be used to accurately predict salinity in San Francisco
4 Bay?

5 A No.

6 Q And it cannot because it does not include this
7 vertical structure of San Francisco dynamics; is that
8 correct?

9 A Correct.

10 Q San Francisco Bay dynamics. By way of an example,
11 I would like you to demonstrate the significance of the
12 vertical structure of San Francisco Bay in predicting
13 salinity.

14 Now, I would like to focus on Exhibit 43A through,
15 I believe, U, and for the sake of time, I will indicate
16 for Dr. Blumberg that those exhibits are essentially
17 divided into three areas. The first two areas describe
18 the idea of the vertical in the three dimensional model,
19 and I have asked Dr. Blumberg to move through those rather
20 rapidly, but if the board has any questions in terms of
21 following through that, it would be helpful if you would
22 simply ask instead of spending a great deal of time.

23 The third section or last portion of that
24 particular exhibit would be a more detailed analysis of
25 exactly what should be done in terms of proper remodeling

1 Q Were you in attendance during the subsequent
2 cross-examination of Dr. Gartrell in Concord?

3 A Yes.

4 Q Have you reviewed Dr. Gartrell's calibration
5 information which was provided to me after the Concord
6 hearings?

7 A Yes, I have.

8 Q And is that information marked as Central Valley
9 Project Water Association Exhibit 44?

10 A Yes, it is.

11 Q Do you consider the model appropriately calibrated?

12 A No.

13 Q Now, Exhibit 10 is a summary of the two-dimensional
14 model, BAYSAL model; is it not?

15 A Yes.

16 Q In your opinion, can you understand the dynamics of
17 the San Francisco Bay and predict salinity of the bay
18 without inclusion of the vertical structure of San
19 Francisco Bay dynamics?

20 A In my opinion, you can't really understand the
21 dynamics unless you include the vertical dimension.

22 Q And that vertical dimension is not included in the
23 two dimensional model, the BAYSAL model; is that correct?

24 A Yes, I think that's a first step toward the
25 eventual development of having a model that does include a

1 the bay with respect to salinity.

2 With that as kind of an overture, Dr. Blumberg, why
3 don't you proceed with your description.

4 A Before I go to my examples, I would like to provide
5 a quick overview of what kind of models are available and
6 what kind of physics are available as far as the state of
7 the art is concerned.

8 Q If you could, Dr. Blumberg, as you put up these
9 overheads, refer to them with respect to their exhibit
10 number. I don't think you have to indicate CVPWA. The
11 one you have up here is 43A, and that will make the record
12 clear as to what you are talking about.

13 A Also, in the bottom right-hand corner of my
14 overhead, you will see that exhibit called out. This is
15 43A. The top portion shows what I feel to be the real
16 estuarine circulation that goes on in the San Francisco
17 Bay system. Basically, we have, once the tides have been
18 removed from the dynamics, we average over a tide. We
19 basically have flow in the surface layer going out towards
20 the ocean and there's a return flow at depth toward the
21 head of the estuary, so basically, we have a flow that is
22 highly structured in the vertical, flow going out at the
23 surface and in at the bottom.

24 There are four types of models that have been
25 configured in the literature to address estuarine

1 circulation. The first one is the most complete in terms
2 of its structure. That is the three dimensional model.
3 What that model seems to do is divide the estuary into a
4 lot of boxes, both up the estuary, across the estuary and
5 with depth, and in each of these little boxes you predict
6 the salinity, temperature and flow field.

7 Q I was going to ask, also, we want to go quickly,
8 but we want to make sure that the record reflects what you
9 say, so take it a little slower and don't worry so much
10 about the time.

11 MR. MAUGHAN: Thank you.

12 A Okay. Shall I repeat any of that on the three
13 dimensional one?

14 The other models, the three lower ones, are models
15 that have been simplified in terms of their depth
16 resolution. The first one I call two dimensional
17 laterally averaged, that is a model that seeks to only
18 look at what's going on in the vertical, so here you have
19 a model that divides vertical into big boxes that extend
20 from one side of the estuary to the other, and really
21 doesn't want to address the fact that the current on the
22 shallow banks is slower than the current in the deeper
23 portion, but it does seek to address what goes on in the
24 vertical. That is the laterally averaged model.

25 Then, we come to the model that has been presented

1 in the testimony and that is a two dimensional vertically
2 averaged model that is a model that retains the structure
3 along the estuary and across the estuary, but is not
4 really concerned with what goes on in the vertical. Here
5 you divide up your estuary into boxes that have no
6 vertical resolution. You get the mean current from top to
7 bottom.

8 If you look at our top slide, if there are, let's
9 say, currents going out at, for example, 15 centimeters
10 per second at the top and a current coming in at the
11 bottom of 10 centimeters per second, what this two
12 dimensional vertically averaged model will give you is a
13 net of 5 centimeters, so you get the average from the
14 vertical.

15 The last type of model, and that was a model that
16 was presented in some of the analysis of flushing time,
17 which was the Denton and Hunt model, which is a one
18 dimensional model. That model really doesn't seek to
19 understand what is going on laterally or in the vertical,
20 but seeks to just get the average current as a function of
21 the cross-sectional area, and here, we have just one box
22 to represent what's going on at different cross-sections
23 of the estuary.

24 My first two examples that I would like to focus
25 upon are those using a two dimensional laterally averaged

1 model. The state of the art of hydrodynamics modeling
2 that looked at the vertical dimension started with this
3 one and then proceeded to the three dimensional case.

4 The examples I would like to talk about are those
5 that were done by my colleagues and me over the years. My
6 first example has to do with an estuary on the East Coast
7 and that is the Potomac River. The Potomac River is an
8 estuary that flows into the Chesapeake Bay which would be
9 out in here, and it's an estuary similar to the Western
10 Delta area in that the intrusion length of salinity is
11 about the same as in that one, compared to the Potomac.

12 The salt comes up and extends up about halfway up
13 the estuary where we have very salty water here and we
14 have very freshwater in this area.

15 The model that I am using is a laterally averaged
16 model to understand what's going on. We predict nothing
17 that's going on across the estuary, only look at every
18 section as to what's going on with depth.

19 Q And the exhibit you were referring to is 43B; is
20 that correct?

21 A Yes, it is.

22 The next few slides starting with 43C show how well
23 the model can represent, first, the tidal dynamics, and
24 this is the plot of the tidal range in centimeters versus
25 distance from the mouth of the estuary in kilometers. We

1 start at the bay entrance here at zero, and go way up to
2 the head of the estuary, Washington, D. C., so it is a
3 long distance, and we can see that the modeling can
4 reproduce the tides pretty well.

5 The next slide, 43D, shows how well this model,
6 being a simplified model, only a two dimensional model,
7 can reproduce the currents in the vertical and here we
8 have currents at three stations along the axis of the
9 estuary, we have the model, being the dashed line and the
10 data being the solid line. We have station 26 kilometers
11 from the estuary, close to the mouth of the estuary, we go
12 further up to 60 kilometers and then we go way up where
13 there's no more salt left in the system to 96 kilometers.

14 The model pretty well captures the phasing of the
15 current dynamics, doesn't always capture the total
16 response in terms of amplitude. This shows that the model
17 can reproduce some of the tidal activity, but we are not
18 interested in what the tides are doing. We are interested
19 in what is the circulation when the tides are removed.
20 What does the mean circulation look like, and that has a
21 lot to do with salinity.

22 My next overhead, and this is 43E, shows you how
23 well the model can compute salinity. Here we have a
24 vertical distribution, we have a longitudinal distribution
25 of salinity in parts per thousand. This is the depth

1 along this axis. The top picture shows the model, the
2 bottom portion shows what the data looks like, the actual
3 data observations that were collected in a field program
4 that I designed were collected at the black dots on the
5 lower portion.

6 This coordinate that goes along horizontally on the
7 slide represents the distance from the mouth of the
8 estuary and again, it's in kilometers. You can see
9 there's a tremendous shape to the salinity profile and as
10 we move further and further up the estuary, the isohalene
11 becomes vertically homogeneous, and we would anticipate
12 that about in this area there would be no net flow moving
13 upwards in the estuary.

14 To confirm that, I would like to show my next
15 overhead and that is the slide of what is the mean
16 current. The top portion, again, is the salinity that I
17 just showed. The bottom portion is what the model sees,
18 what the model computes in terms of mean currents. We can
19 see here in the surface that there's a flow in the head of
20 the estuary going out toward the ocean and in the bottom
21 layer we have a return flow of about equal magnitude to
22 what is going on in the surface, and that water extends
23 very far up the estuary, in fact, up into this area here
24 of one to two parts per thousand isohalene.

25 Q That is Exhibit 43F?

1 A Thank you. That is my first example, the Potomac
2 River. We see there are important tidal dynamics going
3 on, and we seek that can compute the mean circulation,
4 that will do the tidal action as well as the mean.

5 My next example is one closer to home and has to do
6 with a similar-type model application to Sacramento-San
7 Joaquin Delta area. The model is configured to start here
8 at Eckley in the Carquinez Straits as one boundary and
9 moves up into the Sacramento River. It is, again, a
10 laterally averaged model. The first overhead from that
11 example that I would like to show is 43H. The top portion
12 of this figure is a longitudinal view of the salinity
13 starting here at river mile 20 from the Golden Gate and
14 that's the Carquinez Strait portion and there are
15 salinities in parts per thousand, 25, and it gets fresher
16 and fresher. This is the observed salinity. The observed
17 salinity is inserted into this model and we ask what other
18 currents that are compatible with this salinity regime.
19 We have here as an example some vertical current structure
20 at three spots along the axis.

21 At mile 42.4 we have the model predictive flows in
22 the upper layer going out towards the ocean and flows in
23 the bottom layer coming up towards the head of the
24 estuary. The data is denoted by the black dots. Those are
25 measured values.

1 At mile 50, we have a similar structure. At mile
2 53, there's some salt. All the flow is going out toward
3 the ocean.

4 To show you what that looks like in terms of
5 velocity itself, we have here a plot of the mean average
6 velocity. We have flows that are above this horizontal
7 line being flows that are directed downstream. We have
8 above mile 50 all the water going down the stream and when
9 it hits mile 50, this 2 parts per thousand isohalene there
10 becomes a two-layer-type circulation. The flow in the
11 bottom is upstream. It has a vertical motion and then the
12 flow goes downstream.

13 The vertical motion as a function of distance from
14 the Golden Gate is shown on the bottom portion of this
15 figure. Here we have vertical velocity and you can see
16 that the maximum vertical velocities occur right before
17 the salinity response goes to zero. This is for a flow of
18 4400 cfs.

19 The next slide that I would like to show is one
20 where the flow is increased to 10,000 cubic feet per
21 second, and there you see a marked change in the salinity
22 structure. That's Exhibit 43I. Here we are as before
23 with the one or two parts per thousand, the isohalene was
24 up at mile 55. Now it has moved ten miles downstream to
25 right in here. Here again, we have three examples of what

1 the currents look like in the vertical, now at mile 33,
2 38.6 and 40. We have a two-layer flow in this vicinity;
3 that is, mile 33.2 area, we have a two-layer flow further
4 up and when we get to mile 40, now we have unidirectional
5 flow, all pointed downstream.

6 In the case we had previously, at 4,400 cubic feet
7 per second, there was a two-layer flow in this vicinity, a
8 strong two-layer flow. Now we see there is just a
9 doubling of the freshwater of the Delta inflow, that we
10 can have a strong reversal in currents.

11 Again, that's shown in the later averages picture,
12 the third one from the top. We have flow going upstream
13 in the bottom, turns around and goes upstream; and goes
14 towards the ocean in the surface layers. The vertical
15 velocity looks a little bit different, but it does show
16 various peaks of strength in the vertical velocities.
17 This, again, is for 10,000 cubic feet per second.

18 The utility of this kind of model is shown in the
19 next slide where I have for those same two cases, the top
20 two show results for salinity and suspended solids at 4400
21 cfs, and the bottom for the 10,000 cfs case, and this is
22 Exhibit 43J.

23 The model and data results are plotted for salinity
24 at the top, and the third picture, you can see that the
25 model can reproduce the observed salinity rather well, and

1 also, as a bonus, I have shown what the model can predict
2 in terms of suspended solids and suspended solids are a
3 nice thing to know for, for example, phytoplankton,
4 because they have a lot to do with light extinction and
5 growth and dying of phytoplankton.

6 Also, suspended solids provide absorption sites for
7 toxic substances, so it is a good thing to have a handle
8 on. We can see that the model using the flows can predict
9 suspended solids at the peak concentration which occur at
10 mile 45 for the low cubic feet per second case, and now at
11 mile 40 for the high flow case. That is relatively high
12 compared to 44, but not high compared to the grand scheme
13 of things.

14 Q Now, those were the two examples that you have
15 provided in terms of explaining the vertical aspects of
16 the modeling process, and isn't it true then that the type
17 of data that you described in those two first examples are
18 the type of data that's left out of the two dimensional
19 Exhibit 10 model of the state board?

20 A That is correct.

21 Q Will you proceed then to explain how one can
22 integrate the vertical, or the type of data that you just
23 described with the type of information that does, in fact,
24 exist in the BAYSAL model?

25 A The model presented previously recognizes the

1 importance of the lateral gradients of the velocity
2 patterns across the estuary and seeks in the next step to
3 look at the vertical. The examples that I have shown so
4 far do not look at the lateral structure, they only look
5 at what goes on in the vertical and my next example is
6 really the state of the art, what is available in terms of
7 a model that predicts what is going on laterally,
8 longitudinally and vertically.

9 This is a model that I recently ran for the EPA in
10 their program to restore Chesapeake Bay and this is an
11 application of the model to Chesapeake Bay.

12 This is a model that divides the bay into a number
13 of boxes across. Here we have four or five boxes across
14 the Chesapeake Bay and we have about 35 boxes along the
15 axis of the bay. In the vertical there are 10 boxes. I
16 don't show them here because it is a little hard to draw.
17 The major tributaries, the James River, the York, the
18 Potomac that I have discussed before, as well as the
19 Rappahannock. There are seven major tributaries included
20 in this three dimensional model of Chesapeake Bay.

21 Q That's Exhibit 43K?

22 A 43K.

23 Fortunately, for the modeling effort that was
24 applied, there was a period of time when the National
25 Ocean Service was out collecting data in Chesapeake Bay

1 and there was a very good time history, a month-long
2 history of tide-gage information, and we have tide gage
3 information at the triangle locations, at the mouth of the
4 Atlantic Ocean, the mouth of the bay and we have one
5 halfway up and one here, another here, and one at the head
6 of the estuary.

7 The Delta outflow occurs in this area but it also
8 occurs at the head of all these other tributaries that
9 goes into the bay. There are current meter moorings that
10 the National Ocean Service had out, and there was
11 long-term wind information available in the midbay region.

12 One of the features of the model that I have been
13 using is one that addresses turbulence in a very
14 fundamental way. It writes down equations for turbulence
15 mixing and turbulence mixing turns out to be a very
16 important process which goes on in the vertical. It keeps
17 water from being mixed from top to the bottom when it
18 needs to and when the wind blows, for example, it can mix
19 the water column from top to bottom.

20 To show that the model has some predictive
21 capability, we ran a 30-day simulation using all the data
22 collected by the National Ocean Service. Before running
23 the model, this type of model requires a variety of inputs
24 and here I have tried to summarize what those are.

25 This is a three dimensional circulation model.

1 Now, from the atmosphere we have to specify the wind
2 stress everywhere along the surface of this model, at the
3 Atlantic Ocean boundary, at the mouth of this estuary, we
4 have to specify salinities and temperature as a function
5 of time, so as we are running a 30-day simulation, we have
6 to know salinity and temperature in the vertical for all
7 times during the length of the simulation.

8 Also, we have to know the sea level fluctuations.

9 So, those are two important parameters we have to
10 know at the Atlantic Ocean boundary. At the land boundary
11 we have to know the Delta inflow for Susquehanna River in
12 the case of Chesapeake Bay and at the head of every model
13 tributary and we have, again, seven tributaries and the
14 Susquehanna.

15 The interior region also requires a number of data
16 to run the simulation. That is, first, we need to know a
17 three dimensional distribution of salinity and temperature
18 everywhere in the bay because in the National Weather
19 Service model you don't want to predict what has happened
20 the last hundred years, you want to start giving the
21 environments to predict forward in time. This is Exhibit
22 43L.

23 The types of data, the actual data that went into
24 the model for the period September, 1983, for a 30-day
25 simulation that we have run are shown on my next exhibit.

1 This is 43M. Here we have four types of data, four of the
2 types that I mentioned in my previous slide. We have as a
3 function of the time, September, 1980, along the bottom
4 portion of the slide. We have, first, at the top the wind
5 stress, and here the reason September, 1983, was selected
6 besides being a period when there was a lot of data, there
7 was a very significant wind event which occurred about the
8 22nd of September.

9 Here the wind was blowing very strong to the north
10 and these areas are scaled upward pointing north, and
11 there is a scale of magnitude and the strength is denoted
12 here on the axis. We notice on the 22nd the wind shifted
13 from very strong to the north to very strong to the south,
14 and what that did in Chesapeake Bay was mix this very
15 stratified system that had very freshwater at the top,
16 very salty water at the bottom, mixed it completely in a
17 matter of hours, mixed completely from top to bottom.

18 Another boundary condition, another type of data
19 that the model requires as a function of time is the sea-
20 level elevation, sea-level fluctuation, fluctuations from
21 my previous slide at the ocean boundary, and here's what
22 the data shows. This is a 30-day record, you can see the
23 spring and neap cycle that you have been accustomed to
24 seeing in the data that has been presented now over the
25 last two weeks.

1 43-0 These are the mean currents observed, predicted for
2 September, 1983. On the left-hand portion we have the
3 surface currents. The scale is denoted here in the upper
4 left-hand corner. The length of the arrow -- and you can
5 see some arrows here -- the length of the arrow is
6 proportional to how fast the current is moving. The
7 direction of the arrow is really in the direction of the
8 flow.

9 On the right-hand side of the picture, we have the
10 model's predicted bottom currents.

11 First, let's look at the surface currents. We have
12 flows starting here at Susquehanna, coming down Chesapeake
13 Bay, forced up against the western side, as it gets into
14 the lower bay, the currents get bigger and bigger and make
15 their way out into the ocean.

16 About here, a third of the way up, there's a very
17 large residual eddy and pollutants could get trapped in
18 there for extended periods of time.

19 The action along the bottom of the bay is even more
20 dramatic. Here we have, starting at the ocean boundary,
21 flow coming in, moving up the axis of the bay, switching
22 from one bank to the other and moving all the way up
23 almost 300 kilometers here to where the salt runs out and
24 that is in this area here. These are the model's
25 predicted mean currents for the entire month of September.

1 initial state of the bay presented in 43M, and what I am
2 showing here is a longitudinal section up the axis of
3 Chesapeake Bay. The ocean boundary is here at zero
4 distance, and we go up to the Susquehanna, all the way,
5 very far up north, 300 kilometers to the Susquehanna
6 entrance, where the salinity goes to about zero.

7 This is a depth axis here, about 25 meters deep on
8 these scales.

9 The black squares, the darkened squares on this
10 plot are those areas where we have data, so the actual
11 data points are few in number. They pass through what is
12 called objective analysis technique that puts data
13 everywhere in our Chesapeake Bay. It interpolates, in a
14 sense, so that we can start with an initial condition and
15 here we start with relatively freshwater of 14 parts per
16 thousand, and at depth the water is about 23 parts per
17 thousand, and that is a lot of salinity in the vertical, 9
18 parts per thousand.

19 The model uses this as an initial condition for
20 September 1, 1983. It will start at 000 hours and go '30
21 days with tides, with real winds, with observed boundary
22 conditions.

23 We would like to ask, can the model reproduce what
24 is going on in terms of dynamics of Chesapeake Bay? My
25 first results are the mean current shown here on Exhibit

1 Also, superimposed on these tidal undulations which
2 go up and down are episodes, for example, about the 15th
3 of September when the entire sea level in the bay rose
4 about a foot, and these were caused by storms that were
5 going along at the ocean boundary, on the continental
6 shelf.

7 The other boundary conditions that are put into the
8 model are boundary salinities. We have current meter
9 measurements for salinity as a function of time. We have
10 the bottom plotted here as a dashed line and we have
11 surface salinity plotted. We also have temperature
12 plotted. We have surface temperature, being warmer,
13 bottom temperature, and if notice, about the 15th of
14 September that situation reverses and all of a sudden we
15 have very cold water or colder water at the surface than
16 at the bottom, and that really is an unstable situation.
17 You think of hot air rising and now we have hot air
18 actually lowering, that would be an atmospheric analogy.

19 About the 22nd I would like to point again that the
20 entire bay become well mixed from top to bottom. You
21 would think a temperature inversion like that would do it,
22 but it really doesn't. It takes a strong wind force event
23 that occurred on the 22nd to do it.

24 Let me set the stage for this 30-day simulation.
25 We used the data presented here in Exhibit 43M and the

1 They were obtained by integrating the model, by running
2 the model using hourly information, so we have run every
3 hour through the entire month and then averaged all the
4 results to produce this picture.

5 To give you some confidence that these predictions
6 are reasonable, I would like to show you three exhibits
7 which compare modeling and data at stations midway up the
8 axis of the Chesapeake Bay.

9 The first exhibit is 43P. We have three slides and
10 this type of presentation will set the stage for the next
11 two slides. We have time series in day os September,
12 1983, along the bottom part of the slide, and we have
13 three time series that we are looking at. We have the
14 mid-bay elevations; that is, the surface elevations, the
15 tidal dynamics, which is the data on the top part. We
16 have the model results in the center slide and we have the
17 difference between the two on the bottom portion.

18 Not only have I shown the actual tidal signal, the
19 signal predicted by the model, I have also time averaged
20 the tidal currents out so you can see what the non-tidal
21 response is.

22 We can see here the big event that occurred about
23 September 15, well produced up in this data. The previous
24 time series I showed was at the ocean entrance, and this
25 is way up the estuary. You can see it in the data, you

1 can see it in the model.

2 The relative average area between the model
3 prediction and the data is seven percent for this example.

4 The next thing I would like to talk about are
5 currents. Those are typically harder to predict than
6 surface elevations. In fact, they are much harder to
7 predict. Here we have the same scale, September, 1983,
8 along the bottom axis and this is Exhibit 43Q. We have
9 the data in centimeters per second, we have the model, and
10 again, we have the difference between the model and the
11 data. The various events that occur in the data are well
12 represented in the model as well.

13 As far as the absolute signal is concerned; that
14 is, it has the tides in there, it has the wind-driven
15 circulation, the model has a five percent relative average
16 error. However, if you remove the tides and ask how well
17 can the model predict non-tidal velocities, it has a much
18 greater error and that error is about 20 percent, a 20
19 percent relative average error, so we can typically say
20 the tides are done in a much more consistent fashion with
21 the data and it is much more difficult to predict the mean
22 circulation, the circulation that drives the salinity.

23 This leads to my last example of how well the model
24 is doing and that is a comparison of the salinities.
25 Again, we have on the bottom axis the days of September,

1 1983, and this is the salinity near the bottom in the
2 middle of the bay, about 150 kilometers from the mouth, we
3 have the data first on the top, we have the model in the
4 center and we have the difference between the two on the
5 bottom portion.

6 This relative average error is 15 percent between
7 the model and the data.

8 Now, I have to confess or admit that this is one of
9 the better stations out of the six that I have compared.

10 Salinity is even harder to do than currents; however, with
11 a 15 percent relative average error, we know that the
12 model is reproducing what is going on pretty well. You
13 see here that about the 22nd of September you have the
14 dramatic event which changes salinity by about five or six
15 parts per thousand is picked up nicely in the model. The
16 data, however, you notice recovers somewhat from this
17 event with large undulations in salinity. The model
18 doesn't capture that response.

19 Q This is Exhibit 43R?

20 A 43R, yes.

21 The utility of this model, it has been used in a
22 Water quality model of Chesapeake Bay. I just want to
23 show that for some perspective of what you would actually
24 use this type of model for.

25 Here I have predictions of the model, water quality

1 model, using the currents produced by the three
2 dimensional circulation model for the summer of 1984. I'm
3 showing here five different parameters that water quality
4 people are concerned with. We have at the top portion
5 salinity along this axis, the horizontal axis of this
6 picture is distance from the mouth of Chesapeake Bay in
7 kilometers, we have the ocean here, we have the
8 Susquehanna River at this end, the surface data are in
9 blue, the surface model results are in blue, and the
10 bottom results in the model are in green.

11 Here again, we have the ten levels in the vertical
12 and all I am showing you are the surface layer and the
13 bottom layer.

14 What is key and I would like to focus in on, is the
15 dissolved oxygen in Chesapeake Bay. There is a tremendous
16 problem with dissolved oxygen in the summer. The deeper
17 portions of the bay have no dissolved oxygen and that
18 really reduces striped bass, clams, the whole fishery
19 falls apart during the summer. The model reproduces that
20 very well. The data are denoted by these horizontal lines
21 corrected by vertical lines connected by a vertical line
22 and a dot. That represents the mean of whatever data is
23 available for the summer of 1984, plus one standard
24 deviation. We can see then in the surface layer there is
25 a lot of dissolved oxygen, but when we get in the deeper

1 layers of Chesapeake Bay, all of a sudden there is a whole
2 stretch, about 100 kilometers where there is zero
3 dissolved oxygen in the lower layers.

4 The model also is used to reproduce chlorophyll ,
5 surface and bottom layers, phosphates and ammonia.

6 Q Before you move away from that, that is Exhibit
7 43S, and for the record, the lines in green are the
8 surface; is that correct, the surface lines.

9 A Yes -- no, blue is the surface. Green is the
10 bottom. And also, denoted in the key that doesn't have
11 color as a solid line is the surface and dashed line as
12 the bottom, and that key is provided on the picture.

13 The dimensional model really has started to come
14 into its own. In fact, in the last two years, and I would
15 like to close on two slides which address three
16 dimensional modeling in general, and I would like, first
17 to talk about the advantages of the three dimensional
18 model.

19 The first one, and the most important, is that it
20 gives you a good representation of the physics. It really
21 helps you to understand what's going on, helps you to
22 predict what's going on. There's a lot less
23 parameterization that needs to be done, and by that I mean
24 some of the previous testimony showed models that weren't
25 three dimensional. What they have to introduce because

1 they are simplifying the physics of the problem, are
2 things called dispersion and dispersion needs
3 quantification, and that is a problem that is difficult to
4 quantify.

5 The third advantage for using a three dimensional
6 model is now there are many robust models available.
7 There's not just mine and there has been a lot of
8 criticism in the past that my model essentially was the
9 only one that's available, but now there are a number of
10 robust models available, so you don't have to just focus
11 upon the one that exists. There are now some very
12 sophisticated turbulence-mixing models so that we can get
13 a better handle on what's going on in terms of turbulence
14 and mixing.

15 And the final advantage noted here is that three
16 Dimensional models actually make better use of the
17 available data and information, and by that I mean, if you
18 are using a vertically integrated model, you need to
19 compare your results against vertically integrated data.

20 Well, it is very difficult to obtain vertically
21 integrated data. Typically you get a surface measurement
22 of salinity or a bottom measurement of salinity but you
23 never get a vertically integrated salinity. So, here a
24 three dimensional model could converge surface salinity
25 when that data is available or bottom salinity when that

1 data happens to exist.

2 Some of the disadvantages of the three dimensional
3 models are as follows: The first one is it really takes
4 more computational resources. That kind of leads into the
5 computer dollars. It does cost more money in terms of
6 computer dollars to run a three dimensional model than any
7 of the other simpler models as discussed.

8 The second disadvantage, and I find this one more
9 important than the first one, and that is that the three
10 dimensional model is more difficult to interpret. The
11 model is very complicated, the results are very
12 complicated. You have to look at the model results as if
13 they were data, try to understand what's going on in
14 context of the wind forcing, the boundary forcing and the
15 salinity forcing.

16 The third disadvantage is that to really understand
17 whether or not your modeling is a good one, it takes a
18 large amount of data. The three dimensional models
19 produce lots of simulations, there are many grid boxes
20 similar to what I have shown for Chesapeake Bay.

21 We have a need then for having data in every one of
22 those grid boxes to compare the model. The advantages and
23 disadvantages of the three dimensional model are in
24 Exhibit 43T.

25 The last slide addresses the computational

1 resources issue. This is a slide that I carry around with
2 me at all times. It shows along the horizontal axis time
3 since 1950 going up to about 1985, and along the vertical
4 axis it shows the time it takes the computer to do a
5 plotting point multiplication, and that's directly
6 proportional to how much it costs to do computations, and
7 we can see that since 1950 there has been a tremendous
8 decrease in the amount of cost for multiplication, and
9 that cost is still coming down today.

10 We can see almost from this graph that about every
11 ten years you can get a hundredfold increase in computer
12 power. So that every year that goes on, our computer gets
13 faster and faster and cheaper and cheaper, so eventually,
14 three dimensional models will be off the shelf and very
15 easy to use.

16 Q Let me ask you two follow-up questions and I do
17 appreciate your moving through that as quickly as you did.
18 In your opinion, can a three dimensional model be
19 developed for San Francisco Bay?

20 A In my opinion, it can be.

21 Q Would you, in your professional opinion, make
22 predictions regarding salinity to establish salinity
23 standards for San Francisco Bay without the use of a three
24 dimensional model?

25 A I would not make any predictions about salinity in

1 San Francisco Bay without the use of a three dimensional
2 model.

3 MR. SOMACH: That concludes the direct examination.

4 MR. MAUGHAN: Do you want to take a deep breath?
5 That's a lot of material. I think you explained it under
6 the circumstances very well.

7 Who do we have that would like to cross-examine?
8 Mr. Thomas -- anyone else? Mr. Dawdy.

9 Do we have staff, too?

10 MS. LEIDIGH: Yes, staff does have some questions,
11 although we understand if Dr. Gartrell asks questions, it
12 might eliminate the need for staff to ask questions.

13 MR. MAUGHAN: Okay, let's see what the order is. I
14 guess Mr. Thomas is first.

15 CROSS-EXAMINATION

16 by MR. THOMAS:

17 Q Dr. Blumberg, I am Greg Thomas appearing for the
18 Romberg Tiburon Center. Please appreciate as I ask these
19 questions that I have seen your graphs only as you began
20 speaking and I don't pretend to have any in-depth
21 understanding of what they portend, but I did want to ask
22 you if I understand correctly.

23 The implication of your testimony is that salinity
24 measurements taken only at the surface rather than
25 throughout the water column give a distorted view of the

1 average salinity levels; is that the implication of the
2 modeling work that you have done?

3 A In those areas where the salinity is not vertically
4 mixed, it does give a view of the surface salinity. It
5 does not give a view of the average salinity.

6 Q And you expect there to be a mixing of saline iwth
7 freshwater wherever you have an interface between the two;
8 isn't that correct, where you have freshwater flowing into
9 saltwater?

10 A Yes.

11 Q I also understand that the information in some of
12 your exhibits regarding the San Francisco estuary where
13 you show various values for river miles from the Golden
14 Gate, are those data, predictions on your part, or do they
15 reflect actual data?

16 A The second plot from the top --

17 Q I am referring to Exhibit 43H and 43I primarily.

18 A I am putting up Exhibit 43H. There are three areas
19 where there were measurements, and those were provided to
20 U.S. by the Bureau of Reclamation, and they were data at
21 mile 43.4, mile 50, and 53. The data are the dots, and
22 the model results are the solid line.

23 There are more model results than data and the
24 model result is used in that manner.

25 Q Let me ask this: Based upon your modeling

1 technique and what you understand about the hydrodynamics
2 of this estuary, would you have a prediction regarding the
3 manner in which salinity levels will change in the estuary
4 assuming that the frequency of low flow water years of
5 outflow from the Delta is increasing over time? Is that a
6 clear question?

7 A Well, I am really not prepared to answer that kind
8 of question. I wanted to direct my testimony more towards
9 why you should look at including the vertical dimensions
10 into models of San Francisco Bay, but I really am not
11 prepared to talk about what is the response of the bay to
12 the various changes in Delta outflow.

13 Q I am not asking you for information in detail, I am
14 only asking you whether it is consistent with your model
15 and the premises on which it is based that as the
16 frequency of low flow water years increases, you would
17 expect to find increasing salinity regimes in the estuary
18 as well.

19 MR. SOMACH: I think he responded to that question.

20 MR. THOMAS: He didn't respond to the question as I
21 just formulated it.

22 MR. SOMACH: Under the rules, he can say no or I
23 don't want to answer the question.

24 MR. THOMAS: I believe I saw him nod in agreement
25 with that.

1 Q I want to ask very few questions. Your Exhibit 43T
2 on the three dimensional model which you are showing has
3 some advantages and disadvantages; is that correct?

4 A It does.

5 Q If were selling two dimensional models, we might
6 take the advantages and make them disadvantages, and take
7 the disadvantages and make them advantages; is that not
8 possible?

9 A It's possible.

10 Q Wouldn't it be true?

11 A Well, you wouldn't --

12 Q Yes or no, please.

13 A Could you state your question again?

14 Q I say that if we were selling a two dimensional
15 model instead of a three dimensional model, the advantages
16 might become disadvantages and the disadvantages might
17 become advantages?

18 A Yes.

19 Q The disadvantages are the costs, it is more
20 difficult to interpret, and it requires great skill and
21 requires much data.

22 A Correct.

23 Q If you have practically no data, it may not have
24 very much advantage to go to a data-intensive model; is
25 that correct?

1 A Correct.

2 Q I want to look at your Exhibit 43P and 43R, and I
3 wish to state also that you went through very fast and I
4 haven't digested this so I would like to ask a couple of
5 questions.

6 You have mid-bay elevations and you have stated
7 your average errors, and you have stressed at some length
8 the major events that happened apparently the 15th or
9 something like that, and this was reflected in the data.

10 As you went by I saw on 43P that that event, the
11 model response went from some 20 centimeters to 60
12 centimeters, and the error went up to some 25 centimeters,
13 so that would be in the range of -- 25 out of 40, so it is
14 60 percent error. And if it were just absolute in terms
15 of the 60, it would be 40 percent error. That's a fairly
16 large error in relation to the mean error you have stated;
17 isn't it?

18 A For that specific event at that location, the model
19 didn't really predict the total surge.

20 Q And if that surge, that event is a major problem in
21 decision making, then your model would not have predicted
22 it?

23 A At this resolution, these many grid boxes that we
24 have used, it would not predict it.

25 Q Then, its advantage over here on difficult to

1 interpret and rigorous skill assessment requiring much
2 data and more computational resources, should be
3 multiplied by four in order to double the grid size?

4 A Well, for the Chesapeake Bay, in particular, if you
5 were basing decision-making criteria as we are learning to
6 do here, I would use many more grid points than I have
7 used in Chesapeake Bay, at least four times more.

8 Q So, it would cost 16 times as much probably because
9 it usually goes up at the square; doesn't it -- time to
10 compute?

11 A It goes up at a factor of eight, even for
12 Chesapeake Bay.

13 Q Cost of eight, difficulty of interpreting by eight
14 orders of magnitude?

15 A More difficult.

16 Q Much more difficult, and the rigorous scale of
17 assessment, how much would it go up?

18 A I would say roughly the same.

19 Q Another eight?

20 A Yes.

21 Q And the data required to calibrate and particularly
22 to catch that point which is an important decision
23 parameter.

24 A Well, you wouldn't need eight times more data. You
25 would need to compare much better in those locations.

1 Q You would have to know those locations in advance
2 where your model is not going to work?

3 A Yes.

4 Q Okay. It seems that there is a similar case at the
5 end of the month, on the 30th. Once again, there was a
6 large change and your model blew it; is that not correct?

7 A Yes.

8 Q If we look at 43R, the interesting thing, your
9 difference is down at the bottom and you spoke about the
10 average difference. It looks to me like for the first 20
11 some days your model is biased in the salinity; is that
12 not correct?

13 A Biased low.

14 Q Biased low, yes, and then you had something that
15 hit the system and it rang; didn't it?

16 A Well, it didn't ring, it mixed the system.

17 Q The data that are shown at the top have a semblance
18 of what I call a ringing, going up and down, up and down.
19 The mixing is the cause for those rapid ups and downs?

20 A Well, that probably is the fact that the current
21 meter is now positioned at a spot where the salinity that
22 is mixed almost to the bottom is moving up and down
23 rapidly, so that's what you are seeing. The current meter
24 is at a fixed location, but that location has a very
25 severe change in salinity in the vertical so that change

1 is moving up and down.

2 Q But you have a three dimensional model in the
3 vertical.

4 A Yes, but it has limited resolution.

5 Q And it didn't have a dime of response; did it? The
6 model was predicting that to be a little lower than the
7 observed spot.

8 A A little bit lower?

9 Q It's not having any variability at all in there.
10 The dynamics of the system was lost; was it not?

11 A At that location the model did not reproduce the
12 physics of what was going on at that data point.

13 Q I have only looked at two. I can't look at all of
14 them. Let's go to a few general questions. You said you
15 didn't think you would make predictions without the three
16 dimensional model in San Francisco Bay for the purpose of
17 setting standards or something like that.

18 A Correct.

19 Q What level of accuracy do you think is required for
20 a policy decision concerning criteria for San Francisco
21 Bay for salinity?

22 A Well, let me first say that a model is not the only
23 thing I would use to set standards. I would like to have
24 data to make any standards, but I would like to back up
25 some of the physical processes that are going on and I

1 gain that understanding by looking at lots of data and
2 trying to model those processes.

3 I would say if I were to set standards, I would use
4 a model with lots more grid resolution which would pick up
5 more of these events that are missed in the coarser
6 resolution of Chesapeake Bay.

7 Q Well, that was not responsive to my question, I
8 might point out, but we will pass on that.

9 What accuracy is required for a policy decision?

10 A I really can't address that.

11 Q Then, you can't say a particular model is not
12 accurate enough for a policy decision; can you?

13 A A model that can reproduce --

14 Q Yes or no, please.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: Well, he can say yes or no, and then
16 he can explain.

17 MR. DAWDY: And then he can wander from the point
18 as much as he wishes, Mr. Chairman, but I would like a yes
19 or no.

20 MR. MAUGHAN: He can say yes or no, but he can
21 explain his yes or no. We have allowed everyone to do
22 that.

23 MR. DAWDY: Yes, correct.

24 A Can you ask me the question again, please?

25 MR. DAWDY: Q What accuracy is required for a

1 policy decision?

2 MR. MAUGHAN: If you can't answer --

3 A I really don't know the percentage of accuracy, but
4 I should quantify that in terms of physical processes.

5 Q You asked me to repeat the question. I was leading
6 up to the question. I asked you that and you didn't know.

7 Then, you cannot state that a particular model is
8 not usable at some level of accuracy for setting policy
9 standards?

10 A A particular model?

11 Q Yes.

12 A Well, I can't say what model you would like to use.

13 Q It's not I that is wanting to use the model.

14 MR. SOMACH: He responded to the question.

15 MR. MAUGHAN: He can't say.

16 MR. DAWDY: Q Have you heard of decision theory?

17 A Yes.

18 Q You know what perfect information is then?

19 A I have heard of it. I don't purport to understand
20 all the nuances of it.

21 Q Perfect information means you know the system. Are
22 decisions always made with perfect information?

23 A No.

24 Q Are they always made with complete data?

25 A No.

1 Q What is the trade-off between problems which might
2 result if no decision is made because of inadequacy of a
3 model in order to wait for what you would consider an
4 adequate model, and what might result if a decision is
5 made with what you consider an inadequate model?

6 A Well, I think there could be large differences in
7 the decision. What I am trying to relate here is that
8 these kinds of models are available so they should be
9 taken advantage of in helping to set the standards. You
10 might as well use something that's sophisticated and
11 available if it would help out your decision.

12 Q If it is cheap enough, and what were the other
13 criteria -- and if you had enough data?

14 A If you had enough data.

15 Q And if you had enough difficulty to interpret it
16 and if you had the skill and all these other things, so
17 that what I am asking, do you think there is a trade-off
18 between the problems which might result if no decision is
19 made in order to wait for a more adequate model and what
20 might result if a decision were made with what you
21 consider an inadequate model?

22 MR. SOMACH: That was a compound question. Why
23 don't you try one at a time?

24 MR. DAUDY: There is one.

25 MR. SOMACH: It was compound.

1 MR. DAWDY: It is not compound. I asked one
2 question.

3 Would you read it back, please.

4 (The reporter read the question: Do you think
5 there is a trade-off between the problems which might
6 result if no decision is made in order to wait for a more
7 adequate model and what might result if a decision were
8 made with what you consider an inadequate model?)

9 MR. DAWDY: Q I am asking for the trade-off.

10 MR. SOMACH: Did you understand the question?

11 A I'm not sure.

12 MR. SOMACH: Ask him to rephrase it or say you
13 can't answer it.

14 A Are you asking me if trade-offs are to be made?

15 MR. DAWDY: Q I asked you what the trade-off is.

16 A It is my opinion that the state of the art is here
17 and it is not a tremendous undertaking to do, so you
18 really don't have to trade it off.

19 Q Do you think that we have the resources, the data,
20 the skill and all this to go to the ultimate?

21 A I think you can get very close and go a long way
22 toward that goal.

23 Q Even though in the process we miss these critical
24 data points where we have particular interest, even though
25 we go to a more complicated three dimensional model; is

1 that correct?

2 A You may not miss them if you go to a model that has
3 a lot of resolution.

4 Q We may miss them, though?

5 A You may miss them with the models that exist today.

6 MR. DAWDY: That is correct. Thank you.

7 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. Our consultant is hiding
8 behind the post, so I didn't see him there. I thought
9 maybe he was here in the spirit but not in person.

10 EXAMINATION

11 by MR. GARTRELL:

12 Q I just have a few questions. In Exhibit 43A, you
13 described tidally averaged velocities. What do you
14 believe are more important in San Francisco, tidal
15 dynamics or tidally averaged dynamics?

16 A I think in the Western Delta, Suisun Bay area, San
17 Pablo Bay area and many times in the South Bay area, I
18 believe the non-tidal aspects would be very important,
19 especially with regard to salinity.

20 Q Okay. As a follow-up on that, how much dispersion
21 takes place in a tidally average flow compared to flow
22 involving tides, in order of magnitude?

23 A Well, the models that have tides in them -- I'm
24 sorry, I don't understand the question.

25 Q Okay. In a tidally averaged flow compared to a

1 flow with tidal velocities in it, how much dispersion
2 takes place in relative magnitude?

3 A If you have a tidally averaged flow, there is a lot
4 more dispersion that you need to simulate.

5 Q No, in the actual flow, not in the model but in the
6 actual flow, how much dispersion takes place in a real
7 situation in the tidally averaged compared to one with
8 tidal velocities?

9 A One with tidal velocities would require less
10 dispersion than a situation that didn't have tides.

11 Q You are talking about a model, putting less
12 dispersion in the model? Is that what you are saying?

13 A Yes.

14 Q On the exhibit concerning Suisun Bay you said that
15 it was averaged across the bay horizontally; is that
16 correct?

17 A Averaged laterally.

18 Q How did you account for flow in channels in Suisun
19 Bay?

20 A The channels were ignored.

21 Q And the last question is: Does there currently
22 exist a three dimensional model of the entire San
23 Francisco Bay?

24 A No, there does not.

25 MR. MAUGHAN: Does staff want to add any questions?

1 MS. LEIDIGH: No.

2 MR. SOMACH: I have two short redirect questions.

3 MR. MAUGHAN: All right.

4 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

5 by MR. SOMACH:

6 Q Actually, I have one question and then a comment I
7 want to make, but the first relates to Exhibit 43T, and
8 that is the three dimensional model advantages and
9 disadvantages, and quite honestly, it may have been the
10 hostility of the question, but I'm not sure you focused on
11 the question.

12 The question was: Would the advantages become
13 disadvantages? Could you flip-flop them? How does the
14 availability of robust models and turbulent mixing models,
15 the fact that these models exist, how does that ever
16 become a disadvantage?

17 A I was looking at it more in terms of the
18 disadvantages becoming an advantage. In a simple model
19 you use less computer resources, it is not as hard to
20 interpret.

21 Q What you are saying in terms of taking a look at a
22 simpler model, the disadvantages, which really are
23 advantages of a simpler model, is that an accurate
24 reflection of what you are stating?

25 A Yes.

1 Q Okay. So, you are not saying that the good
2 representations of physics or all the advantages could
3 ever be disadvantages?

4 A No.

5 MR. SOMACH: And the last thing I did want to say,
6 and I want to say it for Dr. Blumberg, is that he was
7 somewhat worried about criticizing Dr. Gartrell's work,
8 and I want to make the statement because he made it to me
9 several times, that he did not feel there was anything
10 wrong with the work; in fact, he felt it was very good and
11 moving in the right direction.

12 It was this two dimensional versus three
13 dimensional utilization that he was focusing on.

14 MR. MAUGHAN: I think that came through.

15 MR. SOMACH: Then I would like to request admission
16 of CVPWA Exhibits 42, 43 with all the subparts, and 44.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, any objection? Hearing
18 none, they will be received in evidence.

19 (Central Valley Project Water
20 Association Exhibits 42, 43A
21 through T and 44, were
22 received into evidence.)

22 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, we have a few more to go.
23 Mr. Whitridge.

24 MR. WHITRIDGE: This is on the same subject.

25 MR. MAUGHAN: I realize that.

1 MR. WHITRIDGE: Mr. Chairman, just a brief opening
2 comment really. This is South Delta Water Agency's
3 rebuttal testimony and this, again, concerns the board's
4 model, but in this case, concerns a very specific input
5 used to drive the model which was not properly used, we
6 feel, and we wish to discuss that.

7 Basically, it's the board staff's flow-salinity
8 relationship at Vernalis which has been discussed somewhat
9 in their direct testimony and the incorrect results derived
10 from it.

11 GERALD T. ORLOB,

12 having been sworn, testified as follows:

13 DIRECT EXAMINATION

14 by MR. WHITRIDGE:

15 Q Dr. Orlob, you have been sworn previously; is that
16 correct?

17 A Yes, I have.

18 Q And your qualifications, I believe, are in the
19 record as South Delta Water Agency Exhibit No. 2; is that
20 right?

21 A They are.

22 Q And, in addition to what is shown on that sheet, I
23 believe you are also Chairman of the Civil Engineering
24 Department at UC Davis; is that right?

25 A Yes, I am.

1 Q Have you examined staff Exhibit 3 and the various
2 errata thereto that have been periodically passed out?

3 A Yes, I have.

4 Q Are you familiar with their supposed unimpaired
5 condition water quality at Vernalis and elsewhere in the
6 South Delta as presented therein?

7 A I believe so.

8 Q Okay. Do these incorrectly show unimpaired TDS
9 values to be significantly higher; that is, worse quality
10 at Vernalis in most months, even than what was actually
11 recorded for those months in the 1920s and 1930s, for
12 example?

13 A I believe they do.

14 Q As an example, in the year 1932, do they show the
15 unimpaired TDS would be higher or worse every month of the
16 year than what was actually recorded that month as shown
17 on South Delta Water Agency Exhibit 40 or CVPWA Exhibit
18 113?

19 A They do.

20 Q Okay. Does the historic measured data show that
21 the mean monthly never got above 500 TDS at Vernalis
22 during irrigation season in the period 1930 to 1946?

23 A To the best of my knowledge, it does.

24 Q Are you familiar with the water storage projects --
25 MR. MAUGHAN: Excuse me, Mr. Whitridge, I just want

1 to be sure -- I can't recall positively, were they
2 actually modeling historical conditions or historical
3 years with current conditions, and that would make a great
4 deal of difference in the answer to some of these
5 questions?

6 MR. WHITRIDGE: It's my understanding that they
7 purport to show natural conditions in historic years,
8 unimpaired conditions in historic years.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: Not with any kind of current
10 development then?

11 MR. WHITRIDGE: That is correct.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, go ahead then.

13 MR. WHITRIDGE: Q Are you familiar with the water
14 storage projects existing on the San Joaquin system in the
15 twenties and thirties which the staff has suggested is the
16 only conceivable reason that these could have made this
17 vast difference?

18 A I am familiar with them in general, yes.

19 Q Are these and their capacities listed on pages 9
20 and 10 of South Delta Water Agency Exhibit 4?

21 A I believe so.

22 Q Were the projects which were in existence in the
23 twenties and thirties capable of providing, in your
24 opinion, the vast year-around improvement alleged by the
25 staff?

1 A I don't believe they were capable of the
2 improvements indicated.

3 Q One other that was not listed on South Delta Water
4 Agency Exhibit 4, I might mention is the sack dam on the
5 San Joaquin River. Did that delay water at all? It had
6 no storage capacity; is that correct?

7 A It had very little storage capacity. Basically, it
8 was a diversion dam.

9 Q So that wouldn't have provided vast improvements?
10 Does South Delta Water Agency Exhibit 35, the 1910
11 USGS report present measured TDS data near Mossdale for
12 the period 1906 to 1908?

13 A Yes, it does.

14 Q This is downstream from Vernalis; is it not?

15 A Yes, it is.

16 Q And thus, if anything, it would have had higher TDS
17 than at Vernalis at the same time?

18 A That may be presumed to be so.

19 Q Is it true that these measured TDS from 1906 to
20 1908 never got above 400 parts per million except on one
21 day when it reached 416?

22 A According to the recorded data, yes.

23 Q Now, 1908 was a dry year; was it not?

24 A Yes, that's my recollection.

25 Q Okay, so it would have a low flow, so that would

1 represent dry year conditions for that period?

2 A It would.

3 Q Are the 1906 to 1908 measurements basically as
4 close as you can get to unimpaired natural conditions
5 because at that time there were no upstream storage
6 facilities for irrigation on the San Joaquin system or
7 virtually no upstream facilities?

8 A To the best of my knowledge, these are the earliest
9 data that are yet available for the San Joaquin system.

10 Q Is there any way that that data can be reconciled
11 with the staff's supposed unimpaired condition at Mossdale
12 which frequently go over 900 or 1,000 TDS?

13 A In my opinion, the indicated qualities at Mossdale
14 for natural conditions as represented in state water board
15 Exhibit No. 3 are incorrect and overestimate the quality
16 conditions; that is the total dissolved solids that would
17 occur in the system under such conditions.

18 Q What are the general errors in the staff's
19 methodology which have resulted in these inexplicably high
20 TDS numbers attributable to natural flow conditions in
21 staff Exhibit 3?

22 A I think they are a consequence of misapplying the
23 model, and in particular, the boundary conditions that
24 were imposed on the model at Vernalis.

25 Q Okay. Was the flow-salinity relationship used

1 throughout by the staff developed from data from the 1967
2 to '73 period?

3 A That's my understanding.

4 Q Can you explain why the flow salinity relationship
5 developed for the 1967 to 1973 period would not be valid
6 by applying it to the earlier pre-project period?

7 A Well, there have certainly been significant changes
8 in the level of development in the watershed upstream, in
9 the amount of return irrigation flow and salts that
10 accrete to the stream, and consequently, I would find it
11 very difficult to utilize a representation of a
12 flow-quality relationship for a period in which those
13 projects and developments had not yet occurred.

14 Q Okay. Have you subsequent to reviewing that
15 recalculated what is, in your opinion, a proper flow
16 salinity relationship to apply to the pre-project period?

17 A I have, using the same procedure that was used to
18 develop the flow-quality relationship interpreted
19 additional data which I think more correctly represent
20 conditions that would be corresponding to the natural
21 circumstance.

22 Q Maybe it would be quicker at this point for you to
23 go through your exhibits and explain what you did starting
24 with whichever one.

25 A First of all, I would like to call your attention

1 to the fact that there are very little water quality data.
2 The reference made to the 1906 to 1908 as a source of data
3 are the only significant data sources I am aware of prior
4 to about 1928 or '29. The only other data that are
5 significant for this particular location are the chloride
6 four-day grab sample data that were collected throughout
7 the Delta during the period 1929 to 1973. These cover a
8 period from 1930 to 1973, but they cover a period prior to
9 the development of the major projects upstream such as
10 that of the Central Valley Project and the Friant
11 Reservoir, so they might be taken then to represent
12 conditions without major project development upstream, and
13 I have utilized those data as a basis for my testimony
14 today.

15 I would like to show, first, to remind you of these
16 data the array of information that is available from the
17 chloride data covering this period, and I will utilize the
18 information available for the period prior to about 1944
19 when the Friant Reservoir went on line.

20 MR. WHITRIDGE: Just for the record, this is South
21 Delta Water Agency Exhibit 37 you are showing now?

22 A Yes, it is already in the record.

23 Now, I have taken the data from this record and
24 plotted it on a new exhibit which has not yet been
25 introduced. This is Exhibit South Delta Water Agency 122,

1 and what it shows is the relationship between chlorides at
2 Mossdale; that is, the location of the this grab sampling
3 station, and the runoff at Vernalis downstream from the
4 San Joaquin River represented here in thousands of
5 acre-feet.

6 The data shown are of two types; one for the period
7 prior to 1941, in this case, excluding the period of the
8 war years, and one corresponding to the period 1955 to
9 1964 well after the advent of upstream development by the
10 Central Valley Project. This is only, of course, by
11 virtue of reference to these two periods, distinctly
12 different by the changes in the hydrology in the system
13 and in the storage capacity fitted in this case by eye are
14 two curves which represent in general the trends of these
15 data to show as the flow decreases, the quality generally
16 increases; that is to say, the TDS concentration or
17 salinity increases. However, it will be noted that this
18 increase reaches a plateau which is perfectly logical in
19 consideration of very low flows being derived from
20 groundwater primarily, and from irrigation drainage
21 returns, which are not expected to increase indefinitely
22 as the flow diminishes to zero.

23 So, essentially, we are draining groundwater at a
24 more or less constant quality into the system when the
25 flows are very low, so both curves tend to flatten as one

1 approaches a very much lower flow regime than might have
2 existed in a larger portion of the time.

3 Also noted is that there are two curves, and the
4 difference between these two represents a change taking
5 place over time so it is not appropriate to use the same
6 curve or the same sets of data for periods that are
7 different from the point of view of storage projects and
8 the impacts of those projects on downstream water
9 resources.

10 So, what I have done is taken the data for the
11 period prior to 1944, the chloride data, and using a
12 relationship that we have already discussed --

13 Q If I could go back just one minute, that shows,
14 does it not, that the difference between the 1931 to '41
15 period, and the 1955 to '64 period is specifically for
16 very low flows in the later period the salinity is higher;
17 is that correct?

18 A Substantially higher.

19 Q And at high flow similarly the salinity is higher?

20 A There is some difference, although it is a little
21 less easy to define, and there are some variations there
22 that need explaining if one was to look at what are
23 conditions.

24 Taking these data and utilizing a relationship that
25 we have discussed before, this is South Delta Water Agency

1 Exhibit 39 already in evidence, that shows the
2 relationship between the TDS at Vernalis and chlorides at
3 Mossdale for which a regression curve is presented in
4 which TDS is equal to ten times the chlorides to the 0.77
5 power. Thousand curve, incidentally, was presented as a
6 result of my analysis as a best fit of the data. The data
7 were reviewed again by the Bureau of Reclamation and the
8 general form of this equation was confirmed.

9 So, I think this is well documented in the record
10 at the present time. So, these data represent now TDS at
11 Vernalis for the period prior to 1944. If we take these
12 data and plot them in the same form as had been presented
13 previously in connection with flow-quality relationships,
14 and from which we can derive such a regression equation --

15 Q This is South Delta Water Agency Exhibit 123?

16 A 123 -- we find an array of data that generally
17 follow, if one can imagine a straight line inclining from
18 the lower right to the upper left through the data, and if
19 we follow the same procedure as was used in developing the
20 regression equation on page 19 of State Water Resources
21 Control Board Exhibit 3, we obtain a regression line which
22 has a slope defined by these data. That regression
23 equation has the equation $TDS = 19964.735x Q^{-.4385}$ to
24 the $-.4385$, and has a correlation coefficient of .82 or an
25 R squared value in the order of about .65.

1 Q That was done using a regression analysis?

2 A That was done in this case using a regression
3 analysis for those data that are shown here as small
4 crosses on this plot.

5 Now, in line with my earlier argument that there's
6 a practical limit, let's say, to the extension of this
7 curve toward the origin, to the left that is, we would not
8 want to use that equation for the data that do not conform
9 to the flow-quality relationship indicated by the general
10 trend.

11 And I have decided on the basis of the information
12 available that it would be appropriate to use another
13 relationship when the flow at Vernalis is less than about
14 35,000 acre-feet per month. So these data below 35,000
15 acre-feet per month belong really to another regime
16 dominated primarily by groundwater accretions to the
17 system and there is other evidence to show that there is
18 an appropriate way to deal with such information included
19 in exhibits, for example, by the Department of Water
20 Resources and others.

21 Q Dr. Orlob, this addresses the problem; does it not,
22 that we discussed with the staff on cross-examination that
23 their formula did not have a cap on it and, therefore, as
24 flows approach zero, the TDS values approach infinity?

25 A That is correct, and that's what one would get if

1 you put a very small Q in the equation, you would find
2 that the total dissolved solids would be enormously high.
3 So, for very low flows, you get abnormally high TDS values
4 and these, I believe are incorrect and represent in this
5 case an incorrect application of that kind of regression
6 equation.

7 I can illustrate this in SDWA Exhibit 124 by
8 comparing the two regression equations, one derived, in
9 fact, from information developed for a period subsequent
10 to 1967, I believe that's the correct period, from 1967 to
11 1973, and which should be applied, as I understand it to
12 post-project conditions; that is, post-Central Valley
13 Project, or at least to that period in which the data were
14 developed, and the other developed for the period prior to
15 1944 from the Mossdale data.

16 These two regression lines are shown for purposes
17 of comparison. Quite obviously, there was a big
18 difference between the two and if one particularly were to
19 extend the regression equation on page 19 of State Water
20 Resources Control Board No. 3 toward the left, at very low
21 flows we would obtain very high values of the indicated
22 TDS, and I think this is, in fact, what is indicated in
23 the application of this equation without limiting it by
24 another relationship which should apply at very low flows.

25 So, in my case, I have taken the regression

1 equation, truncated it at a level of 35,000 acre-feet per
2 month and applied a constant value from there on out. That
3 is to say, a value which turns out to be about 415 TDS.
4 This is a value that's consistent for very low flows with
5 actual observations for such examples as that of 1908 from
6 the data previously presented.

7 You will note that the equations are quite
8 different, although they have similar slopes and the
9 regression fits are comparable in both cases. That's not
10 to say these are the best possible relationships that one
11 could develop, but nevertheless, they are comparable in
12 the sense that they use the same technology, and I used
13 subsequently in my case to illustrate the differences that
14 would result in the South Delta if one were to use what I
15 think is the more correct relationship.

16 Q What is the difference generally in magnitude of
17 the results of the --

18 A Well, this, of course, depends on what level of
19 flow one is to consider, but consider, for example, the
20 difference at a level of 10,000 acre-feet per month, which
21 is not unusual, there were three or four months in 1977,
22 for example, in which flows were less than his, the
23 regression equation used in the state board exhibit would
24 indicate something in excess of a thousand milligrams per
25 liter. In fact, there have never been in the period of

1 "records" at Vernalis concentrations of TDS in excess of
2 this value or even as high as that value.

3 On the other hand, the equations that I would use
4 would predict about 415 or thereabouts as the likely value
5 for quality at Vernalis corresponding to natural
6 conditions before the advent of major project development
7 upstream. So there's a large difference of about two and
8 a half times roughly in that particular example.

9 On the other hand, for very wet weather conditions,
10 high runoff, probably there wouldn't be a significant and
11 importance difference as we are really interested in low
12 flows.

13 Q Does Exhibit 125 portray this difference for the
14 year 1977?

15 A Now, taking these two equations and making a
16 comparison, I return to the state board Exhibit No. 3, and
17 utilizing the data for model simulations, at Vernalis as
18 attributed to the Fischer model and also the boundary
19 conditons that are represented in the regression equation
20 that the state board has utilized, we find the upper of
21 these two curves and a set of data points, the small
22 crosses, that correspond to the Fischer model simulations,
23 indicating the total dissolved solids that would be
24 predicted with this set of boundary conditions for the
25 station at Vernalis.

1 The slight difference between the boundary
2 condition and the prediction of the Fischer model is
3 attributed to the way in which the model treats the return
4 salts, to the best of my knowledge. But, nevertheless,
5 one would expect that this set of boundary conditions
6 would be reflected directly in the prediction of the
7 Fischer model because it is close to the boundary.

8 On the other hand, if we were to use the boundary
9 conditions that I propose, which would be more realistic
10 for pre-project conditions, one obtains the lower of these
11 two curves, quite different in terms of maximum values
12 that would obtain in the vicinity of Vernalis, obviously
13 truncated in the periods of very low flow by a limit on
14 the quality that would result there which is primarily
15 irrigation drainage return or would be, and groundwater
16 accretion to the system.

17 Q So, just to summarize, South Delta Agency Exhibit
18 125 shows the natural flow conditions which would prevail
19 in water year 1977 conditions under both the board's
20 erroneous flow-salinity relationship and the lower one is
21 the one you have used?

22 A That is correct.

23 MR. MAUGHAN: What is SJR?

24 A That's San Joaquin River , and there is one and a
25 two which represents the two cases.

1 MR. MAUGHAN: But it is not explained on the chart
2 itself.

3 A I'm sorry, I apologize for that.

4 MR. WHITRIDGE: SJR1 utilizes the flow-salinity
5 relationship that you have developed and SJR2 utilizes the
6 one the staff utilized?

7 A I think it is the other way around, yes.

8 MR. MAUGHAN: All right, it's in the record.

9 A Now, of course, this is at the boundary and one
10 really would expect to find predictions with the models,
11 any model, to agree pretty well with boundary conditions
12 because they are, by definition, what the model responds
13 to as a input, and so, we have used these boundary
14 conditions with our model, that is the Link Node model
15 previous described as a tool to be utilized in simulation
16 of the Delta system, it has been used by the Department of
17 Water Resources and by the South Delta Water Agency, and
18 we use the version of that model that has currently been
19 redeveloped for purposes of the joint studies between the
20 Department of Water Resources and the Bureau of
21 Reclamation and the South Delta Water Agency as a vehicle
22 for this analysis.

23 And we have simulated then for the same conditions
24 in the Delta that we utilized in Exhibit 3 of the state
25 water board to simulate qualities throughout the Delta, we

1 have used this same modeling approach with the boundary
2 conditions at the Sacramento River and other tributary
3 streams identical with the one exception that in one case
4 we changed the boundary condition for Vernalis to that
5 which we have proposed as a more realistic representation
6 of natural conditions.

7 In the first instance, we see a curve generated in
8 this case by the Link Node model and its counterpart or
9 its complement in water quality, the dark line that is
10 shown here, and along with that the result of the Fischer
11 model, and this incidentally is at a station near Clifton
12 Court, and so, we are perhaps comparing them with a small
13 displacement, but more or less the same locations in both
14 models, but this is farther into the interior of the Delta
15 and the point, of course, of showing this exhibit is to
16 show that the boundary conditions do extend beyond the
17 boundary and well into the Delta and affect results
18 throughout the Delta area.

19 In this case, the two models agree fairly well, I
20 would say, although they have certain differences that
21 appear here. The Fischer model, for example, shows a
22 rather gradual smearing of these data, but it follows
23 pretty closely the dark curve. We have two peaks here
24 that show in the Link Node model as prominent, not
25 appearing in the Fischer model results.

1 This, of course, is for the boundary condition used
2 by the state board in its analysis using the Fischer
3 model.

4 The other result, resulting from the application of
5 the boundary conditions that we think are more appropriate
6 and represent natural circumstances, and that's shown by
7 the lower of these two curves, and one can see, for
8 example, in the irrigation season, these are 1977
9 hydrologic conditions in all other respects, although they
10 apparently have no projects involved, we find a difference
11 of about two to one in the relationship for that critical
12 irrigation period between the two sets of results.

13 So, obviously, there's a great difference resulting
14 in this case from an application of what we believe to be
15 an incorrect boundary condition at Vernalis.

16 Q So, Exhibit 126, to summarize, is basically the
17 same exercise as 125 except that it is at a different
18 location and shows the difference by using the board's
19 formula at a different location farther downstream in
20 Clifton Court.

21 A This is an identical simulation at another location
22 that results from the model output.

23 Q One or two final questions -- all of staff's errata
24 for Exhibit 3, including the June errata and the November
25 errata, contain these same basic errors that we have

1 discussed?

2 A I don't think there were any changes in the
3 boundary conditions that were applied.

4 MR. WHITRIDGE: Okay, that's all I have.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. Who would like to
6 cross-examine? Staff?

7 MS. LEIDIGH: Staff has some questions. I think we
8 want to start with Mr. Farro.

9 E X A M I N A T I O N

10 by MR. FARRO:

11 Q Dr. Orlob, are you aware the state board staff was
12 modeling pre-project conditions or any other condition --
13 can you explain what condition the state board staff was
14 trying to model?

15 A As near as I can understand, that was to be a
16 so-called natural condition, which meant without
17 alteration, without the existing projects upstream and
18 their accretions to the system.

19 Q Okay, is that comparable to the pre-project
20 condition data that you used?

21 A Well, I would say as close as one might come.
22 There would be some differences in the period from the
23 thirties because there were some small projects on line at
24 that time and they could, of course, modify the flow
25 regime, but they are relatively small compared to the

1 present system.

2 Q Are you aware of the present-day level of
3 development that the staff tried to depict in the use of
4 the equation?

5 A As I understand it, they were trying to depict
6 conditions pre -- well, let's say natural conditions
7 again, without project development and the level of
8 development that considered, for example, no Central
9 Valley Project with no cross-channels existing as they
10 presently are, irrigation and activity within the Delta as
11 it presently is, or virtually equivalent to that.

12 Q Well, would you like me to explain the staff
13 position on that? I guess if you read the definition of
14 natural flow or unimpaired flow, it was based on the
15 present level of development and the condition was if
16 there was an interruption in diversion for the agriculture
17 at any time for the period of time, the flow would be
18 equivalent to unimpaired or natural flow, so the level of
19 development was involved with the present level of
20 development with agriculture in place and for the period
21 of time that no diversion was made to agriculture at that
22 time. That's what this staff used, the post-project
23 equation from the Department of Water Resources that we
24 showed on page 19, Exhibit 3.

25 A My understanding was that was presented as a

1 pre-project equation in the first place.

2 Q We used pre-project hydrology, we used 57 years of
3 hydrology, but we used the present level of development
4 and the unimpaired flows represent the unimpaired for 57
5 years of hydrology.

6 A I can understand the concept of unimpaired flow and
7 I would use an unimpaired quality to go along with that.

8 MR. FARRO: I guess I have no further questions.

9 MR. MAUGHAN: Anyone else?

10 MS. LEIDIGH: No.

11 MR. MAUGHAN: I still think there's some confusion
12 here between the witness and the staff. I don't know how
13 to help them, so if that's all --

14 MR. WHITRIDGE: I have one question on redirect
15 that might clear that up.

16 MR. MAUGHAN: All right.

17 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

18 by MR. WHITRIDGE:

19 Q Dr. Orlob, staff Exhibit 3 at page 18 states: The
20 San Joaquin River equation was assumed to be adequate for
21 the purposes of this study since it was developed for
22 pre-1944 or pre-State Water Project and Central Valley
23 Project conditions. Do you believe that statement to be
24 true since the formula they used was developed by using
25 the 1967 to 1973 data?

1 A I can't see how those two conditions are
2 reconciled.

3 MR. WHITRIDGE: Okay.

4 MR. MAUGHAN: Well, I appreciate there's a
5 difference of opinion, but I think there is still some
6 confusion. I don't think there is a clear
7 understanding on both sides.

8 All right, is there anything else then before we --
9 do you want to introduce those?

10 MR. WHITRIDGE: I would like to offer 122 through
11 126 in evidence as South Delta Water Agency exhibits.

12 MR. MAUGHAN: Are there objections? Hearing none,
13 they will be accepted. That concludes that particular
14 phase.

15 (South Delta Water Agency
16 Exhibits 122 through 126 were
received in evidence.)

17 MR. MAUGHAN: We have one more, Mr. Anderson and
18 Mr. Brown. All right, Mr. Anderson.

19 MR. ANDERSON: We have Dr. Brown here. He is here
20 to offer rebuttal testimony regarding the evidence that
21 was given by the Contra Costa Water Agency and
22 Environmental Defense Fund, particularly Exhibit No. 4,
23 regarding proposed standards for South San Francisco Bay.

24 I would note for the record that Dr. Brown has
25 appeared before, has been sworn, and his qualifications

1 are a part of the record.

2 In addition to Dr. Brown's testimony, we will also
3 be offering DWR Exhibits 674 through 683, in rebuttal,
4 which Dr. Brown will explain.

5 RANDALL BROWN,
6 having been sworn, testified as follows:

7 DIRECT EXAMINATION

8 by MR. ANDERSON:

9 Q Dr. Brown, do you have any biological concerns
10 related to CCWA-EDF Exhibit 4 which proposed standards to
11 provide for stratification and algae growth in South San
12 Francisco Bay?

13 A Yes, I do. I think, perhaps the exhibit doesn't
14 give enough information to allow the board to make a
15 decision whether such a standard is reasonable or not, or
16 provides reasonable limits of protection for South Bay
17 biota. I think the authors of CCWA-EDF No. 4 have taken a
18 proposed scientific explanation for an observed process
19 and used that to develop a recommended standard, and I
20 think the board needs more information than that exhibit
21 provides to do such a thing.

22 I would draw mainly from the U. S. Geological
23 Survey data set because basically they have the data in
24 South Bay, although we have a little bit here and there,
25 but they have data on the benthic diversity, benthic

1 organisms, and the productivity in the system.

2 The major point I would like to leave you with, I
3 guess you would call it additional information is that the
4 theory about benthic grazing controlling the biomass in
5 South Bay is still a theory. I am not saying I don't
6 believe that theory, I think there is a lot of support for
7 it, and the few field observations that we have taken so
8 far certainly support that in certain parts of South Bay
9 especially the main channel.

10 In the shallows of South Bay, however, as you can
11 see in DWR Exhibit 75, which is a map of South Bay, South
12 Bay basically is a pretty shallow portion of the estuary
13 and the shallows do not stratify to the extent that the
14 channel does.

15 If you recall the proposal by U. S. Geological
16 Survey explained by Dr. Cloern and Dr. Hollibaugh, it is
17 that when you get the spring pulses, the estuary
18 stratifies, South Bay stratifies, and in this case I am
19 talking about South Bay as the entire area south of the
20 Bay Bridge. There are some definitions about South Bay
21 but this is the one I am using here mainly.

22 The shallows, when it stratifies, the algae are
23 physically isolated from the bottom and you get a bloom on
24 the surface, and this bloom is not grazed upon by the
25 benthos, so it develops a pretty high level of algae, and

1 the problem with that theory -- and this is also mentioned
2 by Dr. Cloern, his explanation is that this doesn't really
3 work in the shallows as well because the shallows do not
4 stratify as neatly. The wind and so forth breaks down the
5 stratification, but actually, you get a bloom there in the
6 shallows.

7 If you look at DWR 676, which is from the USGS
8 report, you find two curves there; one with the solid
9 circles and one with the open circles. As you can see,
10 the solid circles, which is a channel stations, the bloom
11 is higher, much higher than the shallows, although there
12 was a bloom in the shallows at the same time.

13 The question is, how does it bloom in the shallows
14 since the benthic organisms there are not isolated from
15 the algae, how do they accumulate? We tried to answer
16 that question, at least provide some answers to that
17 question last spring by a combined study in South Bay with
18 the USGS, DWR and the bureau out there. Unfortunately,
19 for this experiment, the flow didn't cooperate and we
20 didn't get enough flow to understand how the shallows and
21 the channel exchanged.

22 We will try again next spring and hopefully we will
23 have more flow to actually create a bloom and see how the
24 algae move from the channel to the shallows, or if the
25 bloom originates in the shallows themselves.

1 In addition to the phytoplankton in South Bay,
2 there is an extensive layer of algae on the surface of the
3 mud. South Bay is shallow so you get pretty good light
4 penetration, so there is a layer of microalgae on the mud
5 itself.

6 The clam, *macoma Balthica*, is a deposit feeder. It
7 basically is in the mud at a certain depth, it siphons,
8 comes up and can actually graze upon the algae grown on
9 the mud.

10 We don't know exactly how the plankton in this
11 microlayer on the surface of the mud reacts, but we
12 haven't quantified that very well. We don't know what
13 controls. In fact, I think there's a statement true in
14 all this, that we don't really understand a lot of things
15 in South Bay or the bay itself and how blooms are started
16 and decline.

17 Now, I think a major point made by CCWA is that the
18 bloom in South Bay is mainly -- well, if a bloom occurs,
19 it contributes a major part of the total productivity of
20 the system during that year, and it is certainly true in
21 the channel, maybe 30 to 40 percent of the total algae
22 production for phytoplankton occurs in the bloom period.

23 In the shallows, however, it's a much lower
24 percentage, maybe 15 to 20 percent, not much more than
25 what would occur just for this one month out of the year.

1 So, if you look at some data, and unfortunately, we
2 don't have the data set, the data set is still in the USGS
3 computer, but DWR 677 does show some algae levels taken in
4 South Bay last spring and these are micrograms per liter
5 of chlorophyll. The background probably is in the order
6 of two to three micrograms and you will see in stations 41
7 through 48 we did get a bloom down in South Bay last
8 spring. The bloom occurred mainly below San Mateo Bridge
9 and the bloom occurred mainly in the shallows from San
10 Mateo to Dumbarton Bridge.

11 Now, I don't know what happened before and after
12 this bloom period, whether this was the peak, the start of
13 whatever. The data set will be out, I'm assured, shortly
14 by the Geological Survey, so we can analyze these data,
15 but we do get a bloom and Dr. Cloern pointed out he can
16 predict phytoplankton growth in South Bay by a combination
17 of knowledge of outflow as well as temperature and
18 sunlight.

19 The system responds to climate as well to these
20 outflows. So, it is not unexpected that you get a bloom
21 down there.

22 MR. MAUGHAN: And the outflow last year wasn't very
23 high?

24 A Look at Exhibit 678, and the outflow averaged about
25 6,600 cubic feet per second. It was not very high for

1 April.

2 I think on the next part, how do you get from the
3 phytoplankton to the benthos, and I think CCWA No. 4 was
4 somewhat misleading and I think the misleading picture I
5 got, the text, it was an overgrazed pasture, that
6 basically the system is being grazed by these benthic
7 organisms and they are overgrazing the system, and you
8 need more algae for the benthos.

9 I think perhaps a better analogy to this would be
10 this is a very rich pasture and that the signs of
11 eutrophication, which would be dissolved oxygen problems,
12 or too much algae, are being kept under control by the
13 benthic grazers, that this is really to our advantage.

14 I think the following points may help explain that
15 a little better.

16 South Bay receives a major portion of the discharge
17 going into the estuary, and this discharge is high in
18 nutrients. Increased treatment over the past several
19 years have not done a whole lot to take out nutrients, so
20 nitrogen and phosphorous are being discharged in large
21 quantities to South Bay. In fact, the treatment of South
22 Bay was to go away from ammonia discharge, which is toxic,
23 to nitrate discharge, which is non-toxic, but it doesn't
24 change the algae. They don't care whether it is nitrate
25 or ammonia, so you can see in DWR 679, in this case, we

1 have lower bay is the area around San Mateo Bridge and
2 South Bay is the area below Dumbarton Bridge, and as you
3 can see for all years both phosphates and nitrates are
4 quite high in South Bay compared to the rest of the
5 system.

6 So, there are ample nutrients, and the question we
7 have often had by people looking at the system is why
8 isn't South Bay greener than it is. That's been kind of a
9 puzzle for us because it's got lots of nutrients and
10 light is reasonably good down there, and you would expect
11 based on nutrients and light that the concentration of
12 chlorophyll would be higher than the basin plan guidance
13 standard of 25 micrograms per liter routinely.

14 Now, is the guidance standard, basically if we get
15 concentrations higher than that, it's time to start
16 looking to see if it is causing problems.

17 MR. MAUGHAN: Randy, from '81 on to '85, there is
18 really a big jump in both phosphates and nitrogen in South
19 Bay.

20 A Yes. Some of that could have happened because of
21 nitrification -- I'm not sure what happened. If there
22 was loss of ammonia somewhere in the system, I don't know,
23 through increased discharge or -- I'm not sure what it is.
24 There has been a measurable increase.

25 MR. MAUGHAN: Double almost.

1 A And those kinds of levels support a very large
2 growth of algae. It would be at nuisance levels probably.

3 Now, in this analogy about overgrazed pasture, I
4 don't think it is quite an accurate portrayal in that at
5 least we don't have a lot of data, but 1980, which was a
6 high flow year, in the shallows of South Bay there was
7 always more algae produced than was being consumed by
8 zooplankton or benthic grazers. So, in the shallows it
9 was not overgrazed to the extent there was a negative
10 production. There was always a positive production.

11 In the channel, however, because the channel is
12 deeper and the algae can only grow in the light, there was
13 not a net production all year round, only in the months
14 of, I think it was May, and August and September, did you
15 have net increase in growth in the channel.

16 Okay, the question is, is South Bay a pauper in
17 benthos or is it enriched, and if you look at DWR 680, you
18 will find that in general, South Bay is pretty high in
19 benthic biomass. Currently in our system you will find it
20 is in general the highest area. This is probably because
21 benthos in our system is mainly controlled, it appears, by
22 a combination of salinity and organic content of the
23 sediments. Higher salinities, high organic sediments
24 generally mean in our system more benthos. Salinity means
25 stability normally, so South Bay is a stable system and

1 the benthos can develop. Organic content means a rich
2 system and benthos can grow. So, South Bay is rich in
3 benthos.

4 Now, Exhibit 681, which is a complicated table, but
5 look at the last line on that and compare South Bay
6 productivity, which is net production, you see South Bay
7 is higher than the rest of our system. So, in terms of
8 San Francisco Bay, South Bay is probably the richest of
9 embayments in terms of primary phytoplankton production.

10 Now, the question that was raised by Dr.
11 Hollibaugh, I believe, is what level of production is
12 necessary to support some higher trophic levels, in this
13 case, fish through the benthic food chain or zooplankton
14 food chain, and he used a figure from Dr. Nixon, which I
15 reproduced DWR 682 to show that more production means more
16 fish and that probably would not be harmful to South Bay,
17 might even be beneficial to have more production. I think
18 you have to look at 682 fairly carefully. You notice it's
19 a log-log plot, so it kind of obscures a lot of the
20 scatter in the data.

21 A lot of the systems that are richer than our bay
22 are rather unique estuaries or lagoons in very shallow
23 different places in the world, but even with our system,
24 and this is primary production it says on whatever that
25 axis on the bottom is, I guess the X axis, that we are

1 about 100 to 200, which would be 10 squared higher in
2 algae, so we are over towards the middle of the curve.

3 A lot of these systems have not only algae in them,
4 but microalgae on the surface of the muds, as well as what
5 they called the other day submerged aquatic vegetation,
6 SAV, and here we are pretty productive with just the
7 phytoplankton themselves.

8 I did look at a couple and I didn't have time to
9 get the references, but I found a couple of -- one of them
10 is Narragansett Bay on the East Coast. We are about the
11 level they are, it looks like, in South Bay.

12 Dr. Nixon, in another paper which I have a
13 reference to if you are interested, found that system to
14 be what he called moderate to highly productive.

15 So, in terms of an estuary, South Bay is pretty
16 rich comparatively.

17 Okay. I think the important point here is that
18 South Bay is productive, and we really have a lot of
19 trouble taking the data we have in South Bay and
20 extrapolating to other systems in what basically is needed
21 to optimize production.

22 With regard to *macoma Balthica* itself, I think a
23 few things are in order here as to a little more
24 explanation. *Macoma Balthica* was a very happy clam until
25 the GS data came along. It was out there in the mud flat

1 doing its thing by itself and now it's had a lot of
2 attention. It is a common clam in the bay and it is
3 indigenous. It was found here in the system. There is
4 some idea that the one we have here now isn't the one they
5 used to have, that an introduction has been made that may
6 have changed the kind of clam from different areas of the
7 world, we may have imported more clams.

8 Macoma is found around the Northern hemisphere in a
9 lot of different oceans and bay. Our bay is at the
10 southern end of the range, so this is about as far south
11 as it goes before temperature is thought to be a major
12 problem for it.

13 A clam reaches sizes of about 20 to 30 millimeters,
14 and a maximum age of about two to three years in our
15 system. Numerically it is not dominant in the South Bay,
16 but because of its fairly large size, even at 20
17 millimeters it is a fairly important food source for some
18 fish, and as I said, macoma Balthica is generally a
19 deposit feeder, but it may feed on phytoplankton, but I'm
20 not sure to what extent.

21 If you look at DWR 683, this is a comparison of
22 growth rates of macoma Balthica in our estuary, in South
23 Bay actually, with other places in the world where it is
24 found. As you see, it is food limited. It is doing a
25 pretty good job of getting around that because it has a

1 very high growth rate.

2 To paraphrase Sam Luoma, who is a person who has
3 done a lot of work on this particular clam, it lives fast
4 and dies young. It does not reach the old age that
5 similar clams do in other places in the world.

6 MR. MAUGHAN: It says 25 years.

7 A That's in colder estuaries. In our estuary it
8 doesn't make it past about two years. It probably has
9 something to do with the temperature as the temperature is
10 probably too warm for it in the summertime, and growth
11 pretty much stops in the summertime.

12 Okay, I guess a couple of final points is I think
13 the report that was cited by the CCWA in their No. 4,
14 their report that is unpublished as yet but at the press,
15 by Thompson and Nichols, does't clearly establish, I don't
16 think, the relationship between even the spring pulse and
17 the phytoplankton and clam growth. In particular, this
18 was a two-year study, 1983 and 1984, so it is a fairly
19 short data base. They have two locations they studied,
20 both -- four locations all together, two of which were in
21 South Bay, and both of these locations in South Bay were
22 high on the tide flats, there were on the tide flats, they
23 were locations where they could walk out at low tide and
24 pick up the clams and monitor clam growth.

25 The phytoplankton data from these clam sites came

1 from the channel, so we aren't sure exactly what happened
2 over the flats at the same time. So, I think the data
3 base is pretty short.

4 The two sites had vastly different phytoplankton
5 levels in the clam. One had about twice the other.
6 However, the growth of clams in both sites was about the
7 same, so it doesn't appear from this small data set that
8 the more plankton growth, the more clam growth, because
9 he didn't get a difference even though in one case it was
10 two times the other.

11 The two-times level was three times the basin plan
12 chlorophyll warning level or level of interest.

13 Another point about South Bay, I think, is that
14 phytoplankton production doesn't seem to translate to
15 zooplankton production. They mentioned that in their
16 testimony, that this was probably a general case that more
17 algae would mean more zooplankton. In the 1985 report
18 edited by Cloern and Nichols, they had a paper there on
19 zooplankton, and in three and a half years of study they
20 didn't find a relationship between outflow and zooplankton
21 abundance or chlorophyll and zooplankton abundance.

22 Basically, it seemed to be marine zooplanktors that did
23 not respond to conditions such as salinity, or responded
24 to salinity by a change in species composition, but the
25 general abundance is the same in three and a half years of

1 study.

2 In summary, I think South Bay is a very productive
3 system and I'm not sure that we are at the point now in
4 South Bay of developing a standard to increase
5 phytoplankton for a short time in the spring to get more
6 or less productivity.

7 I suspect, in fact, that if you were to develop a
8 standard for phytoplankton in the South Bay, you would not
9 do it for April. It looks to me from examining the data
10 from Nichols and Thompson, or Thompson and Nichols, that
11 really, the growth of this macoma starts out in march and
12 to be of use to the clam the pulses would have to be in
13 March, and I think pulses in March are fairly well
14 unregulated at this time, so probably in wet years you get
15 pulses and in dry years you won't get them.

16 I think the period is wrong, too. The clam spawns
17 in April. It has to have had a fair amount of growth
18 before it starts -- you know, the food resource has to be
19 available earlier, I guess is what I am saying.

20 Okay, I read CCWA report on benthos in Suisun Bay,
21 the entrapment zone in Suisun Bay and the entrapment zone
22 in San Pablo Bay, and I think I will leave my comments on
23 that to Doug Ball with the Bureau of Reclamation, who did
24 a thorough job of reviewing that. I did not review them
25 to the extent necessary to really talk about them, but I

1 do have some reservations about some of the things in
2 there, too.

3 Q Thank you, Dr. Brown; is that your testimony?

4 A Yes, it is.

5 MR. MAUGHAN: All right. Mr. Nakagawa might be the
6 only one -- who else would like to cross-examine, and a
7 few questions from staff after Mr. Nakagawa asks his
8 single question.

9 CROSS-EXAMINATION

10 by MR. NAKAGAWA:

11 Q Dr. Brown, I want to understand exactly the thrust
12 of your testimony. Are you stating, in effect, as a
13 general conclusion that stratification is not needed for
14 phytoplankton production in South Bay in the channels?

15 A At this time, I think it would be premature to
16 reach that conclusion.

17 Q Referring to CCWA-EDF Exhibit 10 entitled "Temporal
18 Dynamics of Estuarine Phytoplankton, a Case Study of San
19 Francisco Bay," written by James E. Cloern, and others,
20 which has been admitted in evidence, let me read you a
21 portion of this report at page 161: In summary, the
22 phytoplankton community of South Bay turns over quickly,
23 especially over the shoals and during summer-fall, and
24 they may be consumed at an equal rate by benthos when the
25 water column mixes.

1 Zooplankton grazing is an important process in the
2 channel but not in the shoals where depths and degraded
3 zooplankton biomass is small.

4 During the brief periods of stratification that
5 occur in spring, phytoplankton biomass increases rapidly
6 in the surface layer and a bloom occurs.

7 Do you disagree with that statement?

8 A No.

9 Q Let's turn to your Exhibit 677 that you just
10 introduced, and can you tell me where stations 41 through
11 48 are located?

12 A Well, I think I better read this into the record:
13 41 is at San Mateo Bridge, about the center of the bridge;
14 42, 43, and 44 are on the shallows on the eastern side of
15 the main channel; 48, 47, 46 and 45 are in the main
16 channel.

17 Q 45 through 48 stations are in the channel below San
18 Mateo Bridge?

19 A Yes.

20 MR. MAUGHAN: Here you are going further south?

21 A Yes.

22 MR. NAKAGAWA: Q Did you say that you did an
23 independent analysis of the conditions in South Bay below
24 San Mateo Bridge to ascertain the existence or lack
25 thereof of stratification during the periods in which this

1 bloom or blooms occurred?

2 A No, I didn't. We have a station at San Mateo
3 Bridge which I could examine, but I didn't do that. I was
4 looking mainly at the proposition that inflow from the
5 Delta was a controlling factor and at 6,600 cubic feet per
6 second average flow you wouldn't get stratification.

7 I did look at the data record from San Mateo Bridge
8 this last year, but there was not a major stratification,
9 but there could have been some. I don't know.

10 Q All right, let's turn to a notion that you
11 expressed that there isn't enough data set in CCWA-EDF No.
12 4 to set a standard. What, exactly, did you mean by that?

13 A Well, the question is, what level of phytoplankton
14 is necessary to support benthic populations. I guess the
15 use that we are talking about here is -- I am not sure
16 what the use is, but I assume in most cases it would tend
17 to be towards fish. The question is what level of
18 phytoplankton is necessary to support benthos or
19 zooplankton which would result in increased fish
20 production, and I don't think we have any of that data at
21 this time.

22 Q So, it isn't your testimony that phytoplankton
23 abundance isn't needed for South Bay for purposes of the
24 fishery, or whatever other beneficial uses that might be
25 made of phytoplankton that does occur?

1 A No, phytoplankton is probably at least one-half,
2 maybe one-half of the total primary production in South
3 Bay. The other half is submerged aquatic vegetation and
4 microalgae on the bottom, so it is necessary to support
5 populations. The question is what levels are necessary to
6 support populations.

7 Q But you do agree in the same breath that, in fact,
8 phytoplankton abundance produced by stratification is a
9 desirable objective?

10 A No, I wouldn't right now agree with that. I'm not
11 sure in what way it would be desirable.

12 Q Then, are you in disagreement with the conditions
13 at least described by Dr. Cloern again in CCWA-EDF Exhibit
14 No. 10 about phytoplankton blooms occurring due to
15 stratification in South Bay?

16 A No, I guess I am not, I guess the question of
17 desirability is the question, how much and at what time is
18 that needed. Now, you are talking about a one-month bloom
19 in April. Somehow the critters in South Bay have to
20 survive for 11 more months, and if 30 percent of the total
21 productivity is in that time, short time frame, I'm not
22 sure what the animals are doing the rest of the year for a
23 food source.

24 So, even though levels of algae in the water column
25 may be low in South Bay the rest of the year, which is

1 probably a good thing from a lot of standpoints, it
2 doesn't say that the productivity is not getting to the
3 clam because they are eating there all the time.

4 Q Didn't you also state that there is phytoplankton
5 production in the shallows, the processes of which are not
6 entirely understood, but that that is a food source for
7 those benthic feeders there in the shallows?

8 A Yes, it is.

9 Q So, to the extent that while there may be an
10 appearance of a disagreement over what it takes to provide
11 phytoplankton abundance, your testimony didn't go beyond
12 that and say that flows ought to be cut off from South Bay
13 in order to eliminate stratification and, therefore,
14 eliminate that portion of the phytoplankton population
15 that is produced by stratification?

16 A No, but I do think, however, that the critical
17 period probably is not April, it is a March period. I
18 think flood control reservation and so forth would
19 probably dictate there will be flows in March and that
20 bloom, if the size of the macoma Balthica is an important
21 animal that must be supported by the spring bloom, April
22 may be the wrong month to do it.

23 Q Is it your testimony that macoma Balthica is the
24 only consumer of phytoplankton in South Bay that is
25 important to the maintenance of the fishery?

1 A No. I am not really sure how important macoma is to
2 the fishery in South Bay. I know clams have been found in
3 fish stomachs.

4 Q Can we agree that phytoplankton is an important
5 source of food for mysids and other food sources for the
6 fishery in South Bay?

7 A Probably not for mysids directly, but indirectly
8 through the food web there would be. Mysids probably feed
9 on zooplankton and zooplankton don't seem to be controlled
10 by phytoplankton levels in South Bay, at least in the
11 first three and a half years of the study.

12 Q Is that study performed by you?

13 A No, by the USGS.

14 Q All right. And is that reported specifically as
15 not showing a direct connection for phytoplankton
16 production and zooplankton abundance?

17 A It shows that in three and a half years varying
18 levels of phytoplankton in varying water years, that there
19 was no observed change in zooplankton levels, which is an
20 indication that there is no relationship. It is a pretty
21 short data base, again, but it is all we have in South
22 Bay.

23 Q Looking at it from the other side, it doesn't seem
24 to show that zooplankton does not consume phytoplankton.

25 A No, they do.

1 Q Now, given that fact, and if my memory serves me
2 correctly, the Bay Area Dischargers Association exhibit in
3 their biological study of South Bay found striped bass and
4 others consume mysids in South Bay. So, to the extent
5 that phytoplankton production in the channels encourages
6 the growth of mysids making it available as a food source
7 for striped bass, that's a good thing; isn't it?

8 A Well, I would disagree with you. I don't think
9 there are that many mysids in South Bay and I don't think
10 there are that many striped bass in South Bay at that
11 stage. I think there are shrimp in South Bay. Crangon
12 is important down there, but I don't think the neomysis
13 shrimp is particularly important in South Bay.

14 Dr. Herrgesell's work shows that we don't find
15 young bass down in South Bay except in very wet years like
16 '83.

17 Q But the fish, including bass, are there?

18 A There are fish there. I don't think there are any
19 striped bass there and not eating neomysis shrimp.

20 Q Now, your notion then that pulses might be good in
21 March rather than April is limited, is it not, to your
22 conclusion that the macoma Balthica apparently has a
23 consumption rate and growth rate during that period in
24 March that's related to phytoplankton abundance?

25 A Well, it's not really a conclusion, it's an

1 indication I get. If you look at the paper by Thompson
2 and Nichols and look at the abundance of phytoplankton
3 that occurred in '83 and 84, and the growth in macoma
4 Balthica, there is a spring bloom in both years in March
5 and about the same the growth spurt in macoma happened.

6 So, it could have been circumstantial or whatever,
7 but the indications are that growth was triggered by an
8 earlier bloom than an April bloom. That growth started to
9 taper off toward mid-April, I believe, at those stations.

10 Q But, again, let's make sure when you talk about
11 those pulses in March, that statement earlier by you was
12 related to your observation of the fact it is somehow
13 related to growth of macoma.

14 A I am saying that there are pulses caused by
15 floodwater flow, that macoma may respond to those pulses,
16 I said I believe the stations are in intertidal areas, we
17 are not exactly sure what the channel pulses have to do in
18 the intertidal stations.

19 Q Turning to your Exhibit 680, was it your testimony
20 that this exhibit shows that benthic biomass is so
21 significant in South Bay that, in fact, there is more than
22 adequate or a substantial population of benthos in South
23 Bay?

24 A No. My contention is this figure shows, very poorly
25 probably, that South Bay has a greater benthic biomass in

1 the stations that they examined, a lot of them, than the
2 rest of the bay does and that the reason why this is, is
3 probably because of the stability, the high salinity of
4 the water, and the fact it is the richest part of the
5 system in terms of annual phytoplankton productivity. And
6 this is an indication. There are more data, I believe,
7 that will bear this out.

8 The stuff in the sixties done by Searle and by UC
9 Berkeley show basically the same thing, that South Bay had
10 a pretty high biomass of benthos.

11 Q Looking at it from the other side, it is not your
12 testimony that it isn't desirable to increase the benthic
13 biomass in South Bay?

14 A Well, I guess more could be desirable.

15 Q Now, in my attempt to understand a portion of your
16 testimony that came in at the very tail end by you, Dr.
17 Brown, concerning DWR 682, could you tell me again what it
18 is you said about 682?

19 A I said, first of all, 682 is a compilation of a lot
20 of data from around the world that has been plotted on a
21 log-log scale.

22 Log-log scales tend to mask the scatter of the data
23 and that without trying to go back to each system and
24 getting the references and trying to see which of these
25 citations include microalgae on the surface of the mud,

1 the submerged aquatic vegetation, phytoplankton, these
2 components, that it is hard to tell from this figure what
3 the figure actually tends to show about the relation
4 between productivity and fisheries yield in relation to
5 our bay, in South Bay in particular now.

6 Our net production is about 100 to 120 for
7 phytoplankton alone. If you add in other components to
8 the productivity of South Bay, which would be the
9 microalgae on the surface of the mud and the submerged
10 aquatic plants, you bring it over to probably -- and this
11 is all guess, but in systems I have looked at the
12 microalgae would be one-half. I looked at one system on
13 the East Coast, Narragansett Bay and phytoplankton
14 production in our system was about the same as Nixon
15 reported in that bay, and he called that a moderately rich
16 estuary.

17 One of the higher levels over here was a bay in
18 that report, Rotaria Bay which has an average depth of
19 about three feet, two to six meters is the depth of that
20 lagoon. It is very rich, higher than ours, but it is an
21 entirely different system, so I think the problem with a
22 plot like this is you really can't tell whether it has any
23 relationship to what you are doing in your estuary until
24 you look at it in more detail, and with the kind of plot
25 here you can't do that very well.

1 Q Well, is it your testimony that you deny that there
2 is a relationship between primary productivity and fishery
3 yield or fishery abundance?

4 A No, I think, in general, there is that
5 relationship, but for any specific case, it may not hold
6 exactly, especially if you talk about algae being primary
7 producers. It could be a system driven by aquatic plants
8 in a lot of cases in a shallow estuary. Certainly, the
9 more algae, often the more fish. In California the best
10 data we have is Clear Lake and the Salton Sea, lots of
11 algae, best fishery in California, but you do suffer some
12 side disadvantages from that. Salton has no oxygen below
13 15 feet and Clear Lake could be characterized as having
14 bloom problem.

15 Q Well, forgetting about the lakes in California and
16 Salton Sea, with respect to San Francisco Bay, do you have
17 any additional data that indicate that there is a food
18 source of greater significance in this system?

19 A No, I do think for the clam macoma, the microalgae
20 on the surface of the mud should be an important source, I
21 mean even Dr. Nichols can't really tell whether these
22 animals are eating the algae on the mud or algae in the
23 water column. They both could be important sources.

24 Q But in looking at it just from a percentage
25 standpoint of the contribution of a food source for this

1 estuarine system, do you agree that, in fact,
2 phytoplankton is probably in terms of significance 50
3 percent or better as a food source within this system?

4 A Yes.

5 MR. NAKAGAWA: No further questions.

6 MR. MAUGHAN: Good. I was going to say one last
7 time.

8 Earle Cummings, did you have a couple of questions?

9 E X A M I N A T I O N

10 by MR. CUMMINGS:

11 Q I have two. The first one relates to DWR 677 and
12 678. You show on 677 that there is a moderately high
13 level of chlorophyll A in the lowermost stations of South
14 San Francisco Bay. Is the water that presumably supported
15 that bloom delivered in April or is that delivered at the
16 end of March, because I notice on 678 you circled April,
17 but on April 7 of 1987, presumably the water that
18 supported that bloom came from earlier in the season.

19 A Well, I am not a hydrodynamicist. I'm not sure if
20 any water -- I guess I couldn't speculate on whether water
21 of those magnitudes, 20,000, 11,000 cfs, have any effect
22 on the lower South Bay, so I'm not sure.

23 Q Do you know how long it takes water from Delta
24 outflow to affect conditions in South San Francisco Bay?

25 A No, I don't, especially at these low flows.

1 Q Okay. I had one other question. I thought I heard
2 you say benthic grazers might be preventing dissolved
3 oxygen problems in the South Bay.

4 A I did say that.

5 Q How do they do that?

6 A Well, if the benthos is not grazing on the algae,
7 the algae could accumulate and the bay could become
8 eutrophic and the algae in the water column could actually
9 cause a problem at the bottom. This is, you know, like I
10 say, in the South Bay in the seventies if you look at the
11 waste discharge in South Bay, the level of nutrients was
12 so impressive and the level of algae were so low that it
13 was a contradiction, and we were amazed there weren't more
14 problems with algae.

15 Q Is that still puzzling?

16 A Well, no, I think Cloern's explanation in the
17 channels especially, that benthic grazing probably has an
18 effect on algae and keeps the crop down.

19 MR. CUMMINGS: All right.

20 MR. MAUGHAN: Anything further from anybody?

21 All right, Mr. Anderson, do you want to offer
22 those?

23 MR. ANDERSON: Thank you, Mr. Chairman. We would
24 like to thank you for accommodating our request this
25 evening. I would like to offer DWR Exhibits 674 through

1 683.

2 MR. MAUGHAN: Any objection? Hearing none, they
3 will be received.

4 (DWR Exhibits 674 through 683
5 were received in evidence.)

6 MR. MAUGHAN: Nine o'clock tomorrow morning.

7 (Evening recess)

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25